NTT docomo

F-01B

docomo PRIME series

DOCOMO W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for purchasing "docomo PRIME series F-01B" mobile terminal.

Before using F-01B, read this manual to ensure safe use and handling.

Instruction manuals for F-01B

The operations of F-01B are described in this manual, "使いかたガイド (Guide)" (installed in FOMA terminal) and "Instruction manual (detailed version)" (in pdf format).

|	
Instruction manual (this manual)	This manual provides information about screens and operations of basic functions. * @ is index term for "使いかたガイド (Guide)".
"使いかたガイド (Guide)" (installed in FOMA terminal)	This guide provides overviews and operations of frequently-used functions. (In Japanese only) In F-01B Stand-by display, MENU ▶ 6 LifeKit ▶ 0 Guide ▶ Select a search method
"Instruction manual (detailed version)" (in pdf format)	This manual provides detailed information and operations of all the functions. (In Japanese only) (From a PC) This manual can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website. http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/support/trouble/manual/download/index.html * The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

- In this "F-01B INSTRUCTION MANUAL", "F-01B" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".
- The images or illustration used in this manual are examples. They may differ from the actual displays.
- In this manual, "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering the terminal security code in 4-8 digits (⇒P39) or performing fingerprint authentication (⇒P40).
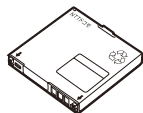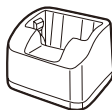
Basic package

F-01B
(including Back Cover F42 and the written warranty)
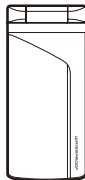
Battery Pack F10

Desktop Holder F30

Desktop Holder F30 is made of recycled ABS from used products.

Instruction manual

Manual

CD-ROM for F-01B

Compatible options ⇒P85

- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents in this manual, URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

Contents

Introduction

Basic Operation

Connect

Search

Enjoy

More Convenient

Others

1

Introduction

- Because your FOMA terminal uses wireless transmission, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio waves are weak, or out of service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves and you are not moving (traveling).
- Use your FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public spaces, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically applies a confidential communication function to all calls, so even if a third party could somehow tap a call, they only hear noise.
- Your FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data (Phonebook, Schedule, Notepad, Recorded messages, Voice memos, Moving picture memos, etc.) you registered in your FOMA terminal. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of FOMA terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card. Using DOCOMO keitai datalink, you can transfer and save phonebook, mail, schedule and other data to a PC.

- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL/TLS.
  Neither DOCOMO nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL/TLS. If the data should be erased, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
  Certifier : VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., Comodo CA Ltd., Entrust, Inc.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and DOCOMO's roaming area.

What you can do with F-01B

AUTO-GPS `62`

The AUTO-GPS function allows for useful services that deliver information about the weather or shops around where you are, or sightseeing information.

使いかたガイド (Guide) `30`

Guide is useful for checking an operating procedure of the function you want to use on FOMA terminal. Without Instruction manual at hand, you can check quickly anytime and anywhere. (In Japanese only)

i-concier `72`

i-concier is a service to use FOMA terminal conveniently in which a character on the stand-by display (Machi-chara) notifies you of useful information and schedules (i-schedule) can be downloaded automatically from a site.

ｉコンシェルは
あなたの欲しい情報を
お届けします。

"ひつじのしつじくん®
(Butler Sheep)"
©NTT DOCOMO

International Roaming (WORLD WING) `51`

While staying overseas, you can use the same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address as those used in Japan (3G/ GSM Areas are supported).

Waterproofness/Dustproofness `17`

Waterproofness of IPX5 and IPX8 (which exceeds IPX7) and dustproofness of IP5X are provided by firmly closing the external connection jack cap and installing the back cover in a locked state.

Kid-safe mode `44`

You can restrict usable functions, so you can let your child use FOMA terminal without anxiety.

3

Part names and functions

Part names of F-01B and major functions assigned to each part are as follows.

❶ Earpiece
Hear other party's voice from here.

❷ Display (touch panel) ⇒P26, 29

❸ Microphone
Send your voice from here. Do not cover the microphone during a call or sound recording.

❹ MENU MENU key
Display a menu.

❺ i i-mode/i-αppli/Character key
Switch i-mode views, i-αppli folder views or character entry modes.

❻ CLR ch/Clear key
Display i-Channel or return to the previous screen.

❼ Start a voice call key
Start a voice call.

❽ 0 - 9 Keypads
Enter phone number or characters, or select an item.

❾ */Public mode (Drive mode) key
Enter "*" or voiced/semi-voiced sound, or start/cancel Public mode (Drive mode).

❿ TV i-Widget/TV key
Start/Exit i-Widget or start 1Seg.
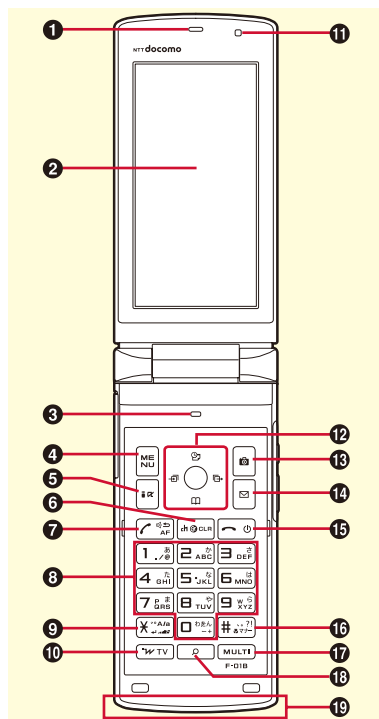
⓫ Light sensor
Sense the ambient luminance to automatically adjust the brightness of the display. Do not cover the sensor with your hand or a sticker.

⓬ Multi-cursor key
Move the cursor, or operate a menu.
- ● : Perform an operation.
- ○ : Display Scheduler, or adjust the volume.
- Q : Display Phonebook, or adjust the volume.
- ○ : Display Received calls.
- ○ : Display Redial.

⓭ Camera key
Start the still camera/movie camera.

⓮ Mail key
Display the mail menu.

⓯ Power/End key
Turn on/off FOMA terminal, or exit a function.

⓰ #/Silent mode key
Enter "#" or punctuation, or start/cancel Silent mode.

⓱ MULTI Multitask key
Start/perform a different function.

⓲ Search key
Start Quick search.

⓳ 1Seg antenna (built into FOMA terminal)
For better signal reception, do not cover the antenna with your hand.

Introduction

4

⓴ **Light** ⇒**P27**

The light turns on when the battery charges, etc.

�21 **Sub-display** ⇒**P27**

ⓢ **Call light/Mail light** ⇒**P27**

The display light turns on or blinks when there is any incoming call, mail or during a call.

ⓓ **FOMA antenna (built into FOMA terminal)**

For a call in better conditions, do not cover the antenna with your hand.

ⓔ **Camera**

Shoot still images or moving pictures.

ⓕ **Fingerprint sensor**

Authenticate a fingerprint.

ⓖ **Speaker**

Hear ring alert or voice of the caller using the handsfree function.
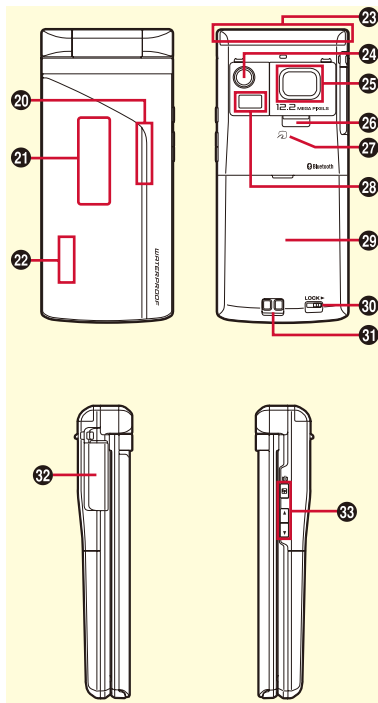
ⓗ **⌃Mark**

Use Osaifu-Keitai or send/receive data by iC transmission.

ⓘ **Light/Infrared data port**

Use this light/port for shooting, or for infrared communication or infrared remote control function.

ⓙ **Back cover**

* To access the microSD card slot, remove the back cover, open the inner cover, and then remove the battery pack.

ⓚ **Back cover lever**

* Firmly install the back cover and lock it with the lever before using to avoid water seepage and dust ingress.

ⓛ **Charging jack**

ⓜ **External connection jack**

Available to connect an optional AC adapter, DC adapter, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function, Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal etc.

ⓝ **Side keys**

⑂ : Use for operating MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel, or for shooting.

▲ : Stop the ring tone, alarm sound, vibration, or adjust the volume.

▼ : Adjust the volume, turn on the light on the sub-display or switch the views.

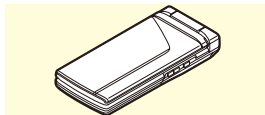**Example of connecting Flat-Plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional)**

Connecting plug of Flat-Plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Flat-plug earphone jack

Plug for the terminal

External connection jack

5
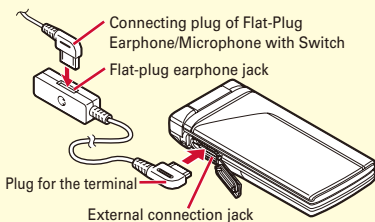
Usage Styles

You can use FOMA terminal in three styles.
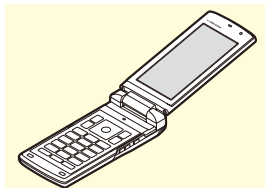
✚ With the terminal closed
The sub-display and light provide information.

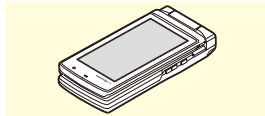### ✚ Normal style (vertical/horizontal)
Either touch operation or keypad operation is available when FOMA terminal is opened.
* To make a videophone call while seeing the other party, rotate the display clockwise by 180 degrees and turn the camera toward you.
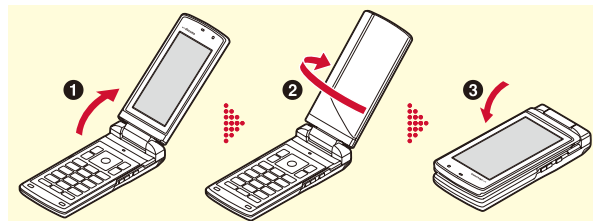
✚ Flip style (vertical/horizontal)
Touch operation is available when the display is facing outward.

To set FOMA terminal to flip style, open the terminal (❶) until the display stops, rotate it clockwise by 180 degrees (❷), and then close it toward (❸).

* To switching back to normal style from Flip style, open the display until it stops, and then rotate it counterclockwise by 180 degrees.

Point

- When switching to flip style, do not rotate the display counterclockwise or by 180 degrees or more. When rotating the display, do not let the corners of the display touch the terminal, etc. Doing so may damage the terminal.

Precautions on rotating display

- Before carrying FOMA terminal with the terminal closed, activate Side key hold to prevent inadvertent operations of the side keys. Before carrying FOMA terminal in flip style, activate Security lock to prevent inadvertent operations of the touch panel or to save battery power consumption.
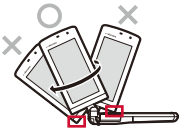
Information

- When the motion sensor is activated, the vertical/horizontal display switches according to the tilt of FOMA terminal. ⇒P38

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines.

⚠️ **DANGER**	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
⚠️ **WARNING**	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
⚠️ **CAUTION**	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

- The symbols below show specific directions.

🚫 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
🚫 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.

🚫 No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
🚫 No liquids	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.

❗ Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
🔌 Unplug	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ **Precautions contain the description below.**

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter, desktop holder and UIM (common)

⚠DANGER

🚫
Don't

Do not use, store, or leave the equipment in hot areas such as near flames or in areas under strong direct sunlight such as inside a vehicle.
May cause the equipment to be deformed or malfunction, and battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the capability or life to be reduced or shortened. Overheating on parts of the case may cause burns or injuries.

🚫
No disassembly

Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. Do not solder items onto the equipment.
May cause fire, injuries, electric shock, or malfunction. It may also cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

🚫
No liquids

Do not let the equipment get wet.
Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injuries. Take care of the place for use and treatment of the equipment.

❗
Do

Use the battery pack and adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO for your FOMA terminal.
Use of equipment not specified by DOCOMO can cause FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

⚠WARNING

🚫
Don't

Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter or UIM in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.
It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, may cause FOMA terminal or adapter to heat, smoke, ignite, or may damage circuits.

🚫
Don't

Do not throw the equipment or give hard shock to it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

🚫
Don't

Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging jack or external connection jack. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.
May be subject to electrical short and could cause fire or malfunction.

❗
Do

**Turn FOMA terminal OFF before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated.
Do not charge the battery. The gas may catch fire.**
When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it. (When IC card lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)

❗
Do

If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations.
1. **Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**
2. **Turn FOMA terminal OFF.**
3. **Remove the battery pack from FOMA terminal.**
May cause the equipment to heat, burst or ignite or the battery pack to leak if you keep using the equipment.

⚠CAUTION

🚫
Don't

Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.
May cause malfunction or injuries.

🚫
Don't

Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.
May cause malfunction.

❗
Do

Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.
May cause injuries.

❗
Do

Store the equipment out of reach of small children.
May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.

Be careful especially when using FOMA terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.

Do

If you use i-αppli, a videophone call or 1Seg watching while charging the battery for a long time, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter may be heated.
Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

Handling FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING

Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.

Don't

May affect your eyes. Faulty operation could result from directing the infrared data port toward other infrared equipment and transmitting signals.

Do not turn on the light by getting the lighting part closer to other person's eyes.

Don't

May impair eyesight. And may cause accidents like injury etc., by dazzling or astounding other people.

Do not put FOMA terminal in the place such as the dashboard near the air-bag, where the influence of air-bag explosion is expected.

Don't

When the air-bag explodes, FOMA terminal may hit yourself or others and could cause injury, equipment malfunction or damage.

When you use electronic medical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.

Don't

Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment could cause equipment failure.

Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into UIM or microSD card slot.

Don't

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Do not turn on the light aiming directly at the driver of the car etc.

Don't

May disturb driving and cause an accident.

Turn FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Do

May cause electronic equipment or electronic medical equipment to fail or malfunction. If the function which automatically turns the power ON is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.
When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.

When you talk by setting handsfree, always keep FOMA terminal away from your ear.

Do

And, when connecting the earphone/microphone to FOMA terminal and play a game or music, adjust the volume moderately.

Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss. And, if you cannot hear the sound around you clearly, it may cause an accident.

If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the Vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.

Do

Could affect heart function.

If it starts thunder while using the terminal outdoors, turn the power OFF immediately, and move to a safe location.

Do

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

9

Turn FOMA terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.

Do

May cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid.
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control equipment.
Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.

When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of broken glass or exposed internal parts of FOMA terminal.

Do

Surfaces of display and camera lens are made of plastic panels and they are structured for the glass not to scatter, however, if you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may be injured.

To sound the high-pitched alarm, always keep FOMA terminal away from your ears.

Do

May cause hearing loss.

⚠CAUTION

Do not swing FOMA terminal by its strap.

Don't

May cause the terminal damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.

When using the motion tracking or motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold FOMA terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.

Don't

The motion tracking and motion sensor are functions to operate by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal. There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing a serious accident or damage.

If you put a metal strap or the like to FOMA terminal, be careful not to let the strap hit people or objects around you when performing motion tracking or using motion sensor.

Don't

Accidents such as injury, malfunction or damage may result.

If the display part is accidentally broken and liquid crystal leaks out, do not put the liquid in your mouth, inhale, or make contact with your skin.

Don't

If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse it with clean water and see a doctor immediately.

And, if the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol etc. to wipe it off, then wash with soap.

May cause loss of sight or skin problems.

Do not bring the speaker close to your ear when the ring alert is sounding or you are playing a melody with FOMA terminal.

Don't

May cause hearing loss.

In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.

Do

In this case, do not use the phone because it may hamper safe driving.

Do Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor.
FOMA terminal contains metal in the parts below.

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Charging jack	ABS	Gold plating
Battery pack connector jack	Beryllium copper	Gold plating
Back cover plate	SUS	None
Rear side of the back cover	SUS	None
Screw	SUS	None
External connection jack	SUS	Gold plating
Nameplate attach place	PC board	Gold plating

Do When opening or closing FOMA terminal, take care not to have your fingers or strap caught by the terminal.
May cause injuries or damages.

Do When watching 1Seg, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.
May cause your eyesight to be impaired.

Handling battery pack

■ Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

⚠DANGER

Don't Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store FOMA terminal with objects like a metal necklace.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't Do not try to force the battery pack onto FOMA terminal if you are having trouble installing it. Always install it after checking that it is correctly oriented.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't Do not throw the battery pack into the fire.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Don't Do not nail the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Do If the battery pack's fluid contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.
May cause loss of sight.

⚠WARNING

Don't If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to an external impact or falling, stop using it immediately.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

Do If the battery pack does not have a full charge after being charged for the specified time, stop charging it.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.

Do If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.
The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.

Do Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.
May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

11

⚠CAUTION

Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.
Don't
May cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.

Do not charge a wet battery pack.
Don't
May cause heat generation, ignition or rupture of the battery pack.

If the battery pack's fluid contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water.
Do
May hurt the skin.

Handling adapter and desktop holder

⚠WARNING

Do not use the adapter cord or power cord if it gets damaged.
Don't
May cause electric shock, heat or fire.

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.
Don't
May cause electric shock.

Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.
Don't
May cause fire.

When it starts to thunder, do not touch FOMA terminal and adapter.
Don't
May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.

Do not short the charging jack while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging jack with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.
Don't
May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injuries.

Place the adapter and desktop holder in a stable location while charging. Do not cover or wrap the adapter and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket.
Don't
May cause FOMA terminal to be removed or the optional devices to be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord or power cord.
Don't
May cause electric shock or fire.

Do not touch the adapter cord, desktop holder or outlet with wet hands.
No wet hands
May cause electric shock.

Only use with the specified power source and voltage.
Do
If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire or failure. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use AC Adapter for global use.
AC adapter : AC100V
DC adapter : 12 or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)
AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use)

If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.
Do
Using other fuses may cause fire or equipment failure. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.

Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.
Do
May cause fire.

When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, make sure not to touch with metal such as metal straps and firmly connect to the outlet.
Do
May cause electric shock, electrical short or fire.

When you disconnect the adapter from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord or power cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the power plug to disconnect.
Pulling the cord could damage it, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.

Do

Always remove the power plug from the outlet when not using the adapter for an extended period.
May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Unplug

Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.
May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.

Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the equipment.
May cause electric shock.

Unplug

Handling UIM

⚠CAUTION

Be careful of the cut surface when removing UIM (ICs).
May hurt hands or fingers.

Do

Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

■ **These precautions are based on the guidelines produced at the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.**

⚠WARNING

Obey the following rules inside medical facilities.
Do
• Do not bring FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
• Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital wards.
• Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical equipment could be nearby.
• If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, obey those instructions.
• If the function to automatically turn ON the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.

Turn FOMA terminal OFF in crowded trains or other public places where pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.
Do
FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.

Wearers of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the implanted device.
Do
FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.

When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.
Do
FOMA terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

13

Handling precautions

General

- **F-01B is waterproof/dustproof, however, do not allow water or dust to seep into FOMA terminal and do not allow accessories or optional devices to get wet or let dust attach.**
  - FOMA terminal is provided with waterproofness of IPX5 and IPX8 (which exceeds IPX7) and dustproofness of IP5X by firmly closing the external connection jack cap and installing the back cover in a locked state, however, it is not complete waterproofness/dustproofness. Do not install/remove the battery pack or do not open/close the external connection jack cap and back cover in the rain or with waterdrop or dirt adhered to them. Water may seep inside and cause corrosion or malfunction. Also, accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof. Malfunctions, which are determined to be caused by water or dust as result of inspections, are not covered by the warranty. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.
- **Clean FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
  - The display of FOMA terminal may have been applied special coating to improve clearness of the color LCD. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth can scratch the display. Take care when handling the unit, and clean it with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display can cause stains or remove the coating.
  - If FOMA terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- **Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab etc.**
  - If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. Also, be careful never to damage the jack when cleaning it.
- **Do not place FOMA terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.**
  - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.

- **When using, be careful not to subject excessive force to FOMA terminal or the battery.**
  - If FOMA terminal is crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, display, internal PCBs or battery pack may be damaged or malfunction. And, if external devices are plugged into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack), the breakage of the connector or malfunction may result.
- **Carefully read the separate instructions that come with FOMA terminal and adapter.**
- **Do not rub or scrape the display with a metal piece etc.**
  - It may scratch the display, causing malfunction or damage.

FOMA terminal

- **Do not press the surface of the touch panel strongly or operate it with sharp objects such as a nail, a ballpoint pen and a pin.**
  - It may damage the touch panel.
- **Avoid extreme temperature.**
  - Use FOMA terminal where the temperature ranges between 5 and 40℃ (limited to the temporary use in a bathroom etc. when temperature is above 36℃) and humidity ranges between 45 and 85%.
- **FOMA terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.**
- **Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in your FOMA terminal.**
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- **Do not drop FOMA terminal or subject it to shocks.**
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not plug external devices into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack) at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.**
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not close FOMA terminal with the strap etc. held inside.**
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- **It is normal for FOMA terminal to become warm during use or charging. Continue to use it.**

- **Do not leave FOMA terminal with the camera in areas under strong direct sunlight.**
  - May cause discoloring or burn-in of materials.
- **FOMA terminal should normally be used with the external connection jack cap closed.**
  - Dust and/or water brought into FOMA terminal cause troubles.
- **Do not use FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.**
  - It may cause the battery to come off, or may cause a malfunction or damage.
- **Do not put extremely thick stickers on the display or the key side.**
  - Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not put strong impact on the fingerprint sensor or scratch its surface**.
  - It may cause malfunction of fingerprint sensor and disable authentication operation.
- **Clean the fingerprint sensor with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
  - If the fingerprint sensor is dirty or water is sit on its surface, the sensor does not read fingerprints, decreases its authentication performance, or erroneously operates authentication function with no finger on it.
- **While microSD card is being used, do not take the card out and do not turn off FOMA terminal.**
  - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not bring magnetic cards etc. close to FOMA terminal.**
  - Magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- **Do not bring magnetized objects close to FOMA terminal.**
  - Bringing strong magnetism close may cause a malfunction.

Battery pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable part**.
  - Replace the battery pack if FOMA terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- **Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35℃).**
- **Always charge before using it for the first time or after extended disuse.**

- **The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.**
- **The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.**
- **Be careful especially about the following points when preserving or leaving the battery pack for a long time.**
  - Keeping under the state of the full charge (right after charging ends)
  - Keeping under the state of the empty charge (too exhausted to turn on FOMA terminal)
  They may cause the battery pack performance to be degraded or its lifetime to be shortened.
  For necessary battery level to keep for a long time, the display of battery icon is a state of approximately 2 or 3 cells.

Adapter

- **Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35℃).**
- **Do not charge the battery in the areas below**.
  - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
  - Near land-line phones or TVs/radios
- **It is normal for the adapter to become hot while charging. Continue to use it.**
- **When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.**
  - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- **When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.**
- **Do not give strong shock. Do not deform the charging jack.**
 - Doing so may cause malfunction.

UIM

- **Do not use excessive force to install/remove UIM.**
- **It is normal for UIM to become warm during use. Continue to use it.**
- **Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with another IC card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep UIM ICs clean.**
- **Clean UIM with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
- **Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in UIM.**
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- **To preserve the environment, bring the old UIM to a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.**
- **Avoid extreme temperature.**
- **Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.**
  - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop UIM or subject it to shocks.**
  - May cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend UIM or place heavy objects on it.**
  - May cause malfunction.
- **Do not install UIM into FOMA terminal with a label or sticker put on UIM.**
  - May cause malfunction.

Bluetooth® devices

- **This FOMA terminal is equipped with the security features, that are compliant with Bluetooth standards for communication via Bluetooth. However, depending on the settings, there may not be enough security. Be aware of security risks when using Bluetooth.**
- **DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any information which may be leaked during communication via Bluetooth.**
- **You can use headset, handsfree, audio, dial-up connection, object push and serial port devices with FOMA terminal. An audio/video remote control may be available with an audio device (only Bluetooth compatible devices).**

- **Frequency bands**
  Frequency bands used by FOMA terminal Bluetooth function are as below.

① ② ③

2.4FH1

④
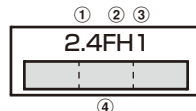
① 2.4 : Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz band.
② FH : The modulation is the FH-SS method.
③ 1 : The expected interference distance is 10 m or shorter.
④ [   ] : All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile object identification devices cannot be avoided.

Cautions on using Bluetooth devices
In the bandwidth used by this terminal, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations used to identify mobile objects used in production lines of a factory that require a license, specified low power radio stations, or amateur radio stations that do not require a license (hereafter "other radio stations") can be in operation.
1. Before using this terminal, check whether other radio stations are in operation in your neighborhood.
2. If radio wave interference occurs between the terminal and "other radio stations", use the terminal in a different location or "Turn the power OFF" to avoid the radio wave interference.
3. For more detailed information, contact "General Inquiries" using the phone number on the back of this manual.

FeliCa reader/writer

- **FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.**
- **It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep FOMA terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.**

CAUTION

- **Do not use a remodeled FOMA terminal. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law.**
  FOMA terminal is certified according to technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment based on the Radio Law, and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark ⊕" is depicted on the engraved sticker of FOMA terminal.
  If you remodel FOMA terminal by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid.
  Do not use FOMA terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law.
- **Be careful when you use FOMA terminal while driving a car etc.**
  Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to penal regulations.
  If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.
- **Use the Bluetooth function only in Japan.**
  The Bluetooth function of the FOMA terminal is compliant with wireless standards and is authorized for use only in Japan.
  If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.
- **Use FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**
  FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards.
 If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

Waterproofness/Dustproofness

F-01B is provided with the following waterproofness by firmly closing the external connection jack cap, installing the back cover and locking the cover.
- **IPX5 (Former JIS protection code 5)*1**
- **IPX8*3 that is a higher standard than IPX7 (former JIS protection code 7)*2**

Also, F-01B is dustproof to IP5X (former JIS protection code 5) *4 if the external connection jack cap is strictly closed as well as the back cover is mounted and locked.

*1 Code IPX5 means that a phone keeps functioning after directly applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min. for at least 3 minutes from a distance of 2.5-3 m on a rotating turntable.
*2 Code IPX7 means that a phone keeps functioning after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out.
*3 Code IPX8 means that it provides waterproofness of which exceeds of IPX7 standard.
*4 Code IP5X means that a device is protected against the ingress of dust specific to dustproof test (25 μm or smaller in diameter), so that the ingress will not interfere with predefined operation and safety of the device.

●●●●
F-01B provides the following waterproof performances of IPX8.
- F-01B keeps functioning after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1.5 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out.
- The mobile phone keeps shooting still images or moving pictures in 30 minutes in static tap water at room temperature.
●●●

✤ What you can do with waterproofness and dustproofness of F-01B

• **You can talk or watch 1Seg programs without using an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).**
 - When your hands or FOMA terminal are wet, avoid installing/ removing the back cover or opening/closing the external connection jack cap.
• **You can also shoot still images and moving pictures in the pool depth of 1.5 m.**
 - Do not perform other operations underwater than shooting still images and moving pictures.
 - If you put the terminal in water of swimming pool, be sure to have it within 30 minutes.
 - If FOMA terminal gets wet with water from the swimming pool, wash it as predefined (⇒P20).
• **You can use FOMA terminal in a bathroom.**
 - Do not put the terminal in the bathtub. Do not use the terminal in hot water. Doing so may cause malfunction.
 - Never put FOMA terminal in hot spring water or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder.

To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness

To avoid water and dust ingress, be sure to observe the points below.
• Do not throw any liquid other than room-temperature tap water on FOMA terminal, or soak it in such liquid.
• Open/close the external connection jack cap as described below.
 <Opening the external connection jack cap>
 Place your finger at groove on the hinge side to open the cap.

Groove on the hinge side
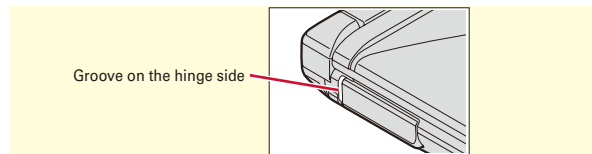
**<Closing the external connection jack cap>**
Close with the tab for the back cover at the rear side of the cap fitted into the concave of this terminal. Make sure that the cap is completely closed without slack.

Tab on the back cover side
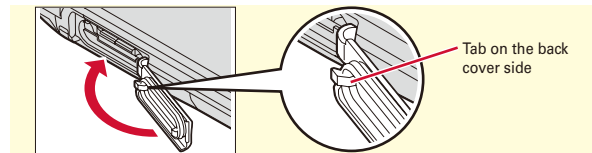
• Install the back cover as described below.
  <Installing the back cover>
  Align 8 tabs of the back cover with concaves of FOMA terminal.
  While pressing the back cover in the direction of ❶ so that there is
  no gap between FOMA terminal and back cover, slide the back cover
  in the direction of ❷ to install, then slide the back cover lever in the
  direction of ❸ to lock.

Back cover
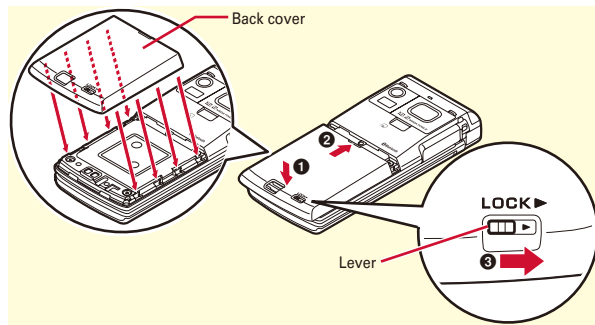
LOCK►

Lever

  * Make sure that the back cover is completely closed without slack. Slide the
    back cover in the direction of the arrow shown on the lever, and then make
    sure the cover is securely locked before using.
• Securely lock the back cover and firmly close the external connection
  jack cap. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber,
  etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to enter.
• Do not poke the microphone, earpiece or speaker with a swab or
  sharp object.
• Do not let FOMA terminal fall. It may become scratched causing the
  waterproof/dustproof performance to degrade.

• The external connection jack cap and the rubber packing of the inner
  lid play an important role for keeping waterproof/dustproof
  performance. Do not remove or scratch it. Also, prevent dust from
  adhering to it.

• • •

To keep the FOMA terminal waterproof/dustproof, replacement of
parts is required every 2 years regardless of whether FOMA terminal
appears normal or abnormal. DOCOMO replaces the parts as a
chargeable service. Bring FOMA terminal to a sales outlet such as a
DOCOMO-specified repair office.

• • •

Important precautions

Do not perform actions shown in the illustrations below.

<Example>

Using Soap/Detergent/
Bath powder

Washing with
brush/sponge

Washing by
laundry machine

Applying strong
water flow

Using in
hot spring

Soaking in
ocean water

**Observe the following precautions to use FOMA terminal properly.**
• Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof.
  When watching 1Seg etc. with FOMA terminal installed in the
  desktop holder, do not use it in a bath room, shower room, kitchen
  or lavatory even if it is not connected to the AC adapter.

• Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (⇒P17) (e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower). F-01B provides the following waterproof performances of IPX5. However, it causes malfunction.
• If FOMA terminal should get wet with salt water, seawater, soft drink or with mud or soil, flush away immediately. When it dries out, it becomes harder to get rid of, causing scratch or malfunction.
• Do not put FOMA terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
• Do not move in water or slam the terminal against the surface of water with FOMA terminal opened.
• If you put the terminal in tap water or in water of swimming pool, be sure to have it within 30 minutes.
• When you use the terminal in swimming pool, obey rules of the facility.
• FOMA terminal does not float on water.
• Do not leave water on FOMA terminal. May short-circuit the power jacks, or in a cold region, water may freeze causing malfunction.
• Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece or speaker. Such water may interfere with talking.
• If the back cover is damaged, replace it. Water may enter inside from a damaged section causing troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the battery.
• If FOMA terminal gets wet with water or other liquids with the external connection jack cap or back cover open, the liquid may get inside the terminal causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using FOMA terminal, turn the power OFF, remove the battery pack and contact a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
• If rubber gasket on the external connection jack cap or inner lid is damaged or deformed, replace it at DOCOMO-specified repair office.

●●●
DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.
●●●

Washing FOMA terminal

Wash the terminal with tap water while holding the external connection cap. Do not rub the terminal.
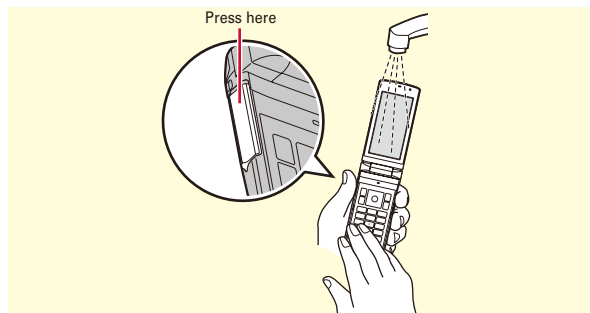
Press here

• Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (⇒P17) (e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower).

- Wash it using room-temperature tap water with your hand, with FOMA terminal locked, the back cover installed and the external connection jack cap held in position.
- Do not use any brush, sponge, soap, cleaning material, etc.
- When mud or soil is attached to FOMA terminal, do not open or close the terminal or rotate the display. Instead, rinse the terminal clean by shaking it several times in tap water in a bucket and then flush away with running water.
- After flushing away, wipe off water with a dry cloth, drain, and dry naturally as follows.

## Draining the water from FOMA terminal

When FOMA terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water in the following steps.

① **Wipe FOMA terminal surface with dry, clean cloth etc.**

② **Shake FOMA terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding its hinge section, until there is no more water splattering.**

To drain water off the speaker, shake FOMA terminal with the speaker upward
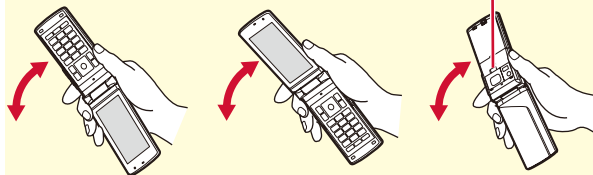
③ **Softly press dry, clean cloth etc., against FOMA terminal to wipe off water remaining in the microphone, earpiece, speaker, keys, hinges or charging jack.**
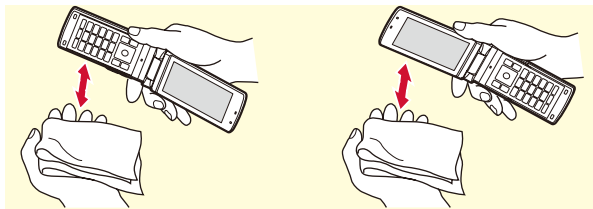
④ **Remove the back cover and wipe off any drops of water around the inner lid and the rear side of the back cover. Never open the inner lid. After wiping off the water, install and lock the back cover.**

Removing back cover ⇒P23

Around the inner lid

Rear side of the back cover
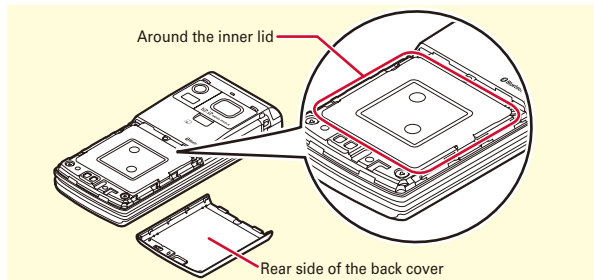
⑤ **Wipe off water drained from FOMA terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.**
  ・ Water, if any, remaining in FOMA terminal may ooze up after wiping off.
  ・ Do not wipe off water remaining in concaves directly with a cotton swab etc.

Charging

Check the following before and after charging.
• Check that FOMA terminal is not wet. Never try to charge the battery pack when FOMA terminal is wet.
• Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/dustproof.
• When charging the battery when or after FOMA terminal is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with a dry, clean cloth etc., before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection jack cap.
• When the external connection jack cap is opened for charging, close the cap firmly after charging. It is recommended that the desktop holder be used for charging to prevent water from seeping inside from the external connection jack.
• Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, shower room, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. May cause fire or electric shock.
• Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. May cause electric shock.

Attaching UIM (FOMA card)/battery pack

After turning power OFF, close FOMA terminal and hold it in your hand so that you can properly attach UIM/battery pack.

✛ Removing Back Cover

Slide the back cover lever in the direction of ❶ to unlock, and then slide the cover in the direction of ❷ by 2 mm with a thumb to remove it. Pinch the tab of the inner cover and open the cover in the direction of ❸ until it stops.

Lever | LOCK► | Press here with your thumb

❶ ❷ Back Cover ❸ Tab
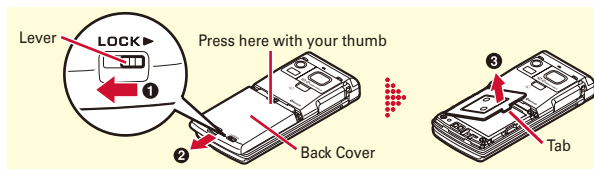
✛ Installing UIM

Pull the tab with your nail and pull out the tray until it clicks (❶). Hold UIM with the IC side down, align the beveled corner with the tray (❷) and push into the tray until it stops (❸).

Tab
UIM
IC
❶ ❷ ❸
Tray
Beveled corner
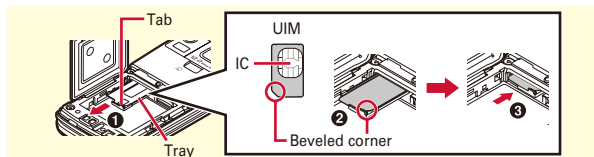
Point

• UIM (blue) is not available for this FOMA terminal. If you have the UIM (blue), bring it to a docomo Shop.

✛ Installing battery pack

With the label side of the battery pack upward, align convex parts of the battery pack with concave parts of FOMA terminal and slide the battery pack in the direction of ❶, press the battery pack in the direction of ❷ to set it in, and then close the inner cover.

❶ ❷
Convex Part
Battery Pack
Concave Part
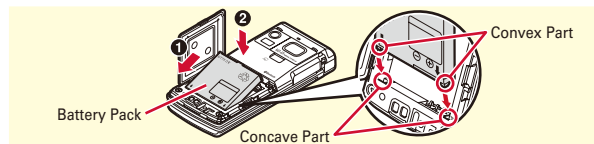
✛ Installing back cover

Place the 8 tabs of back cover to the notches, press back cover in the direction of ❶ to avoid forming any clearance between FOMA terminal and back cover, then slide it in the direction of ❷ to install it. Finally, slide the lever in the direction of ❸ to lock.

Back cover
❶ ❷ LOCK► Lever
❸
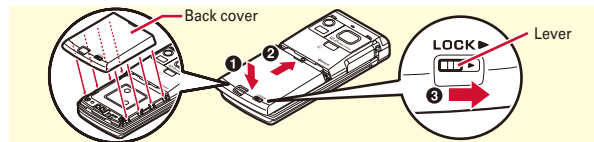
Point

• The inner cover is designed to be firmly closed for maintaining waterproofness/dustproofness. Opening the cover forcibly may injure your nails or fingers.
• To prevent damage due to excessive force, the hinge of the inner cover (the section where FOMA terminal makes contacts) is designed to be removed. If it is detached, align metal pins on the inner cover with the slots on FOMA terminal, and then press the cover until it clicks.

Basic Operation

23

Charging

The battery pack does not have a full charge at time of purchase. Use AC adapter for FOMA terminal to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

Using desktop holder and AC adapter in combination for charging

1 **Insert the AC adapter to the desktop holder, with the arrow on the AC adapters connector upward.**

2 **Unfold the AC adapters power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.**

3 **With FOMA terminal closed, insert it into the desktop holder.**

   * Check that the light turns on.

4 **After charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder.**

Light   AC adapter   100V AC outlet
Release button
Connector   Power plug   Insert at the back side
Desktop holder
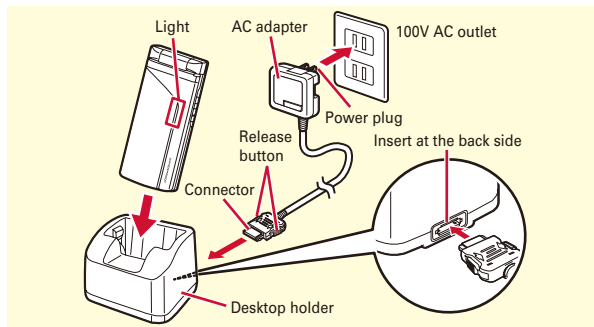
Charging using AC adapter

1 **Open jack cap (❶) of FOMA terminal, hold the connector horizontally with the arrow side upward and insert it to the jack. (❷)**

2 **Unfold the power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.**

3 **When charging is over, pull out the power plug from the outlet, and pull out from FOMA terminal horizontally while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector.**


Light   Power plug   100V AC outlet
Connector
Release button
External connection jack   Jack cap   AC adapter
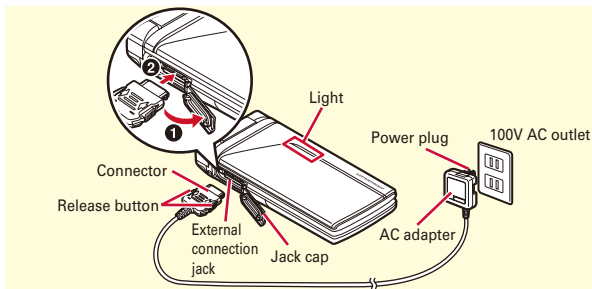
✤ Operations for charging

When charging starts, a charge start alert sounds. While charging, the light turns on and the battery icons on the display and the sub-display blink. When charging is over, a charge completion alert sounds.

Basic Operation

24

Turning power ON - Configuring default setting

Perform the following operations after turning the power ON for the first time.

1 ⌐ **(2 sec. or more)**

2 **"Yes" or "No" on a confirmation screen of enlarged menu setting**
The screen shown to the right appears.

3 **Set required items ▶ 📷 [Complete]**
Always set Password and Request permit/deny. If you exit without setting, Initial setting screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.

4 ● **on a confirmation screen of software update function**
The stand-by display appears.

```
Initial setting
Date & time
Auto time adjust     ON
Date    2009/01/01(Thu)
Time              00:00
Password
Fingerprint         OFF
Key/touch sound
                 Sound 1
Text size
        Medium(Standard)
Request permit/deny
```
<Initial setting screen>

Point
・If no operation is performed, the display light is turned off automatically according to the settings in Light time-out or Power saving mode. The display light turns on again if there is any operation or incoming call.
Turning power off : ⌐ (2 sec. or more)
Changing the initial setting : MENU ▶ 8 7 4 7
Changing screen display to English : MENU ▶ 8 2 6 3 ▶ Select "English"

User information

Check your own phone number.
For details of checking/changing a mail address, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 MENU ▶ 0 **User information**
The screen shown to the right appears.

```
User information
Name

My phone number
090XXXXXXXX
Mail address

```
<User information screen>

Basic Operation

Point
Editing user information : On User information edit screen,
📷 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Edit ▶ 📷
Checking a phone number during a call : MULTI ▶ 0

Viewing display
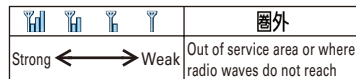
The current state can be checked by the icon appearing on the screen. Major icons are as follows.

Top of the display

Battery level (Battery icon)

Ample charge	←————————→	Almost exhausted (Charge the battery)

Signal strength (Antenna icon)

				圏外
Strong ←———→ Weak				Out of service area or where radio waves do not reach

- **SELF** : Self mode ON
- : In data transfer mode
- : Connecting to i-mode
- : Infrared communication in operation

- : Bluetooth ON
- : The total calls cost exceeds the limit
- : Bluetooth connection being established
- : Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress
- : Handsfree ON
- : Power saving mode activated
- : Positioning with GPS
- : Request setting
- : Lock on close or Security lock ON
- : Kid-safe mode ON
- : A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute
- : High-pitched alarm ON

- : Unread Area Mail exists
- : Unread i-mode mail exists
- : Arrival i-concier information exists
- : Unreceived i-mode mail exists in i-mode Center
- **SSL** : Displaying SSL/TLS page etc.
- : Auto-send mail exists
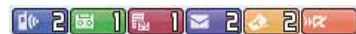- : Music&Video Channel program obtaining reservation exists
- : During i-αppli operation
- : i-αppli call exists
- : Alarm clock ON
- : Schedule reminder ON
- **OFFICEED** : Inside OFFICEED area

Bottom of the display

Arrival information (Starting from the left, missed call, recorded message, voice mail service, unread message, unread ToruCa, i-αppli call)
- : Silent mode ON
- : Call alert volume OFF
- : Vibrator for voice call ON

- : In Public mode (Drive mode)
- : Record message ON
- : Keypad dial lock ON
- : GPS Request failed
- : Personal data lock ON
- : Music&Video Channel program obtaining failure
- : Reading UIM
- : IC card lock ON
- : Available multi-cursor key

- : Performing 1Seg recording reservation
- : i-αppli Auto start failed
- : microSD card installed during Communication mode
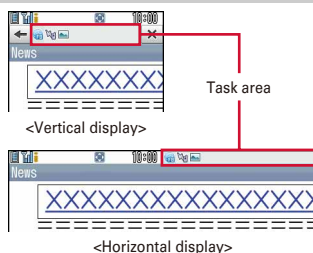- : Connected to external device using USB cable
- : Pedometer/ACT monitor is set
- : Software update rewrite notice
- : Auto-update of latest pattern definition failure

Task area

The icon indicating the function (task) in progress appears in the task area.

Task area

<Vertical display>

<Horizontal display>

Guide area and key operation

Operations that can be performed by pressing MENU, i☆, ●, ⬛ and ✉ are displayed in the guide area. To perform an operation in the guide area, press the corresponding key. The display in the guide area automatically switches according to the tilt of FOMA terminal.

Guide area
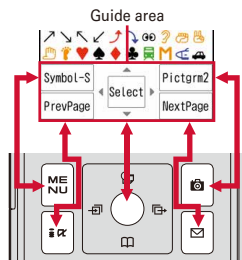
Viewing sub-display and light

Even when FOMA terminal is closed, the icons in the sub-display and lights provide information. When no operation is performed for approximately 8 seconds, the sub-display light is turned off, but it turns on again when you press either side key.

✚ Switching views

Each time you press 🔼, the view switches in the order of Clock (Digital 1) ⇒ Clock (Digital 2) ⇒ Analog. When "Use" is set to Set Pedometer/ Activity monitor, or "Yes"is set to Show ticker of i-Channel setting, each time you press 🔼, the view switches in the order of Activity ⇒ i-Channel ticker ⇒Clock.

✚ Arrival information

When a missed call, recorded message, unread message, or voice message of Voice Mail service. exists, press 🔽 with Clock displayed to display the number of calls or messages, and then press 🔼 to scroll reception date/time and information about the senders.

✚ Call light and mail light

Call light (📞) blinks when an unchecked missed call exists, and mail light (✉) blinks when an unread message exists.

✚ Light

The light turns on when the battery charges, the camera is activated, light alert (⇒P37) is set, etc.

✐ **Information**

• The light on the sub-display turns on just by tilting FOMA terminal. 【◎背面自動点灯設定 (Auto light on)】

Basic Operation

27

Menu operation

On the stand-by display, press MENU and then perform the functions from the menu. You can select a menu item with shortcut operations, which use the keypad, ✖ and ✚, or with multi-cursor operation, which uses the multi-cursor key to move the cursor.

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

Shortcut operations

1 MENU ▶ 7 ▶ 4
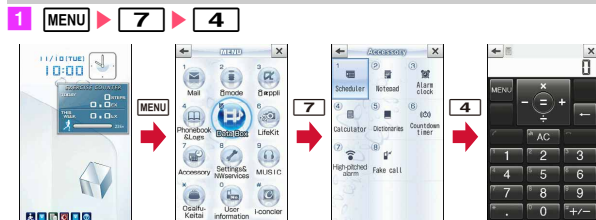
Multi-cursor key operations

1 MENU ▶ Move the cursor to "7 Accessory" ▶ ● [Select] ▶ Move the cursor to "4 Calculator" ▶ ● [Select]
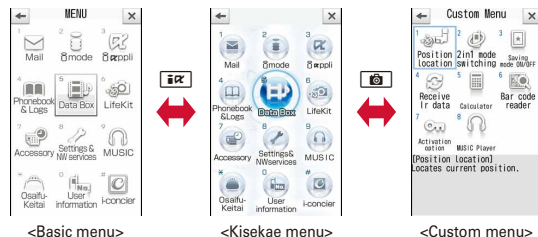
Point

· Even when a function is running, you can perform the same operation if "MENU" is displayed on the guide area.
· To return to the previous screen, press CLR. To return to the stand-by display, press ⌁.
· On the stand-by display with Info/calendar layout, Shortcut icons set, or with arrival information icon or i-concier information displayed, press ● to change the display to Focus mode that allows you to quickly display the related information.

Switching menu screens

You can switch among "Kisekae menu", the design of which can be changed using Kisekae Tool (⇒P37), "Basic menu", which has the fixed menu numbers, and "Custom menu", to which menu items can be saved freely.
A Kisekae menu matched with the color of FOMA terminal is set by default.

<Basic menu>   <Kisekae menu>   <Custom menu>

Point

· In some types of Kisekae menus, the menu structure is changed according to usage frequency, or the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applicable.
· The menu that appears when MENU is pressed on the stand-by display can be changed from the start menu. ⇒ P35
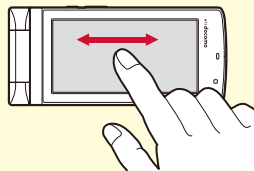
Basic Operation

Using touch panel

You can use the display as touch panel. You can perform the same operation by touch operation as on the screen to move the cursor with key operation.

Types of touch operations

Touch	Touch the display lightly once and release the finger. The operation becomes effective when you release your finger from the display. This operation is mainly for selecting menus, items, etc.
Double-touch	Touch the display lightly twice and release the finger. The operation becomes effective when you release your finger from the display. This operation is mainly for zooming in/out or switching the display.
Slide	Keep touching the display, move your finger up, down, right or left. This operation is for scrolling a screen, rewinding/fast-forwarding a video, etc.
Slide quickly	Touch the display lightly and flick your finger up, down, right or left. This operation is for switching pages or images, or moving to a different chapter or tune, etc.
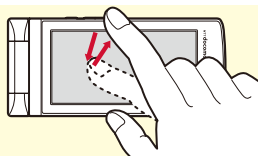
Example: Touch   Example: Slide

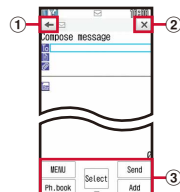## Touch-specific operations

Major touch operations are as follows.

Function selection from the stand-by display
Use stand-by touch buttons (4 buttons at the bottom of the screen) and stand-by launcher (shown to the lower right).

Guidance button
Return to the previous screen (①), exit a function (②), or operate a function displayed in the guide area (③).

Menu buttons for touch operation
Buttons that correspond to a function are displayed.
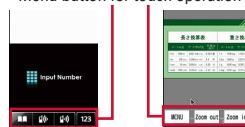
e.g. : Outgoing call screen   e.g. : My document

Moving focus and selecting menu/item
Touch a menu or item to select, move the focus for touch operation, then touch the menu or item again.

Slide on the list   Touch an item directly

Basic Operation

29

Link items or confirmation screens

Directly touch an item.

Numeric value setting roller

Set numeric values such as date and time, rotate the roller by slide operation.
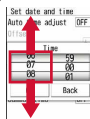
Direction/Determination button

When using i-mode browser in flip style, use the direction/determination button to operate menus or items on the screen.

Channel switch panel/Volume adjust panel/Slider

While playing 1Seg or a moving picture, slide vertically or horizontally to display a panel, and then touch or slide.
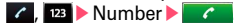
Change channel

Touch or slide the slider to adjust a value.

Making a call

Touch the stand-by touch button 📞 , 123 ▶ Number ▶ 📞 .

Input Number

Answering a call

Touch the display while receiving a call to display a button, then touch 📞 .

Screens

使いかたガイド (Guide)

You can check overviews and operations of functions, and troubleshooting. (In Japanese only)

1 **MENU** ▶ **6** **LifeKit** ▶ **0** **Guide** ▶ **Select a search method**

目次 (Contents) : Search from a list of functions.

索引 (Index) : Search from a list of words sorted according to Japanese syllabary.

フリーワード検索 (Free word search) : Enter a keyword to search for.

ブックマーク (Bookmark) : Search from a list of registered bookmarks.

<Guide screen>

困ったときには (Troubleshooting) : Search from lists of troubles or error messages.
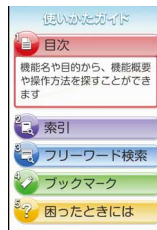
Point

- On a description screen, select "この機能を使う (Use this function)" to perform a function. Selecting a link item in "関連機能 (related functions)", or "→コチラ (See more)" displays a corresponding description screen.
- Terms indicated with 【⊙】 in this manual are index terms in "Guide".

Information

- You can also access フリーワード検索 from Quick search. ⇒P75

Entering characters

There are 2 methods for entering characters : "key operation" and "touch operation". Each operation has 2 input modes.
On the character entry screen, each time you touch an input mode switch button (▦▸ぁ , etc), the input modes and the icons switch.

Difference between key operation and touch operation

Entering characters with key operation

|	**5-touch input**	**2-touch input**
Outline	Multiple characters are assigned to each key and the character is switched every time a key is pressed.	A character is entered by pressing a combination of 2 keys.
Example	"ろ" : **9** (5 times) "っ" : **4** (3 times) ▶ **✳** "ぼ" : **6** (5 times) ▶ **✳** (twice) "ん" : **0** (3 times) "ぎ" : **2** (2 times) ▶ **✳**	"ろ" : **9 5** "っ" : **8 0 4 3** "ぼ" : **8 0 6 5** **0 5** "ん" : **0 3** "ぎ" : **2 2 0 4**
Operations during entry	**⌒** : Return to the previous character. (Example : お⇒え⇒う⇒…)	-
	CLR : Cancel or delete entered characters. (after the entry is fixed)
	✳ : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (Example : ほ⇒ぼ⇒ぽ⇒ほ⇒…, つ⇒っ⇒づ⇒つ⇒…), or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).

* To enter Chinese characters, set Multilingual usage setting to "ON" and use "T9 input method".

Entering characters with touch operation

	Hand writing	**Touch keys**
Outline	Write characters with your finger in the hand writing entry area	Select a character with touch operation
Example	Write "六", "本", and 木 in order in the hand writing entry area.	"ろ" : [ら9] ▶ [ろ] "っ" : [た4] ▶ [っ] "ぼ" : [は6] ▶ [゛ ゜] (twice) ▶ [ぼ] "ん" : [わ0] ▶ [ん] "ぎ" : [か2] ▶ [゛ ゜] ▶ [ぎ]
Operations during entry	**[A/A]** : Switch two-byte/one-byte character **[Clear] or ←** : Delete 1 character at the cursor position (after the entry is fixed)	
	[Clear] : Delete recognized characters **[Close]** : Close the conversion options list **[Corr]** : Rewrite a character	**[A/a]** : Switch upper/lower case **[Back]** : Return to the first level of each input mode on the character entry screen **[PrevPage]/[NextPage]** : Display the previous/next symbol list

Basic Operation

31

Switching input modes

Switching input modes varies by the input method.

5-touch or 2-touch input method

Each time you press ［i⍺］ on the character entry screen, the input mode switches as "One-byte number" ⇒"Hiragana/Kanji" ⇒ "One-byte katakana" ⇒ "One-byte alphabets" ⇒ "One-byte number"….
• 🔘 switches two-byte or one-byte characters.

Input with touch keys

When [TextMode] is touched, the input mode list is displayed, and touch any of [Kana] [Alphameric] [Num] [Katakana] [Symbol S] [Symbol L] to switch the input mode.

Text input

Set a text input method or operation during text entry.

1 ［MENU］▶ ⑧ **Settings&NWservices**▶ ⑦ **Clock & Other**▶ ② **Text input**▶ ⑤ **Text input method**▶ Set required items▶ ［📷］ **[Set]**

Entering pictograms/smileys

Entering pictograms

1 **On the character entry screen, when [Pict/Sym] is displayed, ［📷］ [Pict/Sym]**

> The type of pictogram list is indicated. The pictogram list switches each time you press ［📷］.

> Recently used pictograms appear as input logs.

> When there are multiple pages, press ［i⍺］ or ［✉］ to switch pages. For Pictogram D, a folder is switched.
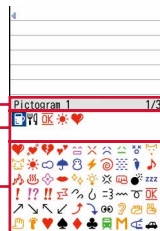
2 **Select a pictogram**
Press ［CLR］ to close the pictogram list.

Entering smileys

1 **On the character entry screen, ［MENU］▶ ⑤ Smiley/Quot/ Phrase▶ ① Smiley▶ ① 入力履歴 – ⑨ すべて▶ Select a smiley**
Entering smileys on the mail edit screen : ［MENU］▶ ⑤①▶ ① - ⑨ ▶ Select a smiley

✎ **Information**

• You can save often-used sentences and words. 【@文字入力 (Character Entry) ▷ 定型文登録 (Save phrase)/単語登録 (save word)】
• You can copy, cut and paste entered characters. 【@文字入力(Character Entry) ▷ コピー／切り取り／貼り付け (Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters)】
• You can register authentication information such as user names and passwords. 【@パスワードマネージャー (Password manager)】

Sound settings

You can set tones, such as changing a ring alert, adjusting the volume, or muting the sound emitted from FOMA terminal.

Setting ring alerts and sound

You can set your favorite melody for a ring alert or alarm.

<Example> Setting Call ring alert (Call ring alert/V.phone ring alert)

1. **MENU** ▶ **8 Settings&NWservices** ▶ **1 Alerts & Sounds** ▶ **1 Ring alerts & Sounds**

   In addition to ring alerts, you can set alerts such as mail ring alert, messages ring alert or i-concier ring alert.

2. **1 Call ring alert** ▶ **1 Call ring alert or 2 V.phone ring alert** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ **[Set]**

<Sound setting screen>

1 Call ring alert
2 Mail/Msg. ring alert
3 i-concier ring alert
4 GPS alert
5 Alarm sound
6 System sound
7 Charge alert
8 Call session
9 Melody Call

[Call ring alert]
Sets ring alert for incoming calls.
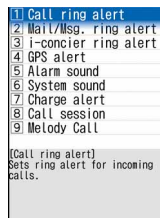
Point --------------------------------

- When Call ring alert is set, the setting applies to Call alert and Videophone alert.
- Some music or moving pictures/i-motion may not be set to the ring alert.

Adjusting volume

You can set the volume of a ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

<Example> Setting call alert volume

1. **MENU** ▶ **8 Settings&NWservices** ▶ **1 Alerts & Sounds** ▶ **2 Adjust volume**

   In addition to the volume of the ring alert, you can set the volume of the alerts such as mail ring alert, message ring alert and i-concier ring alert.

2. **1 Alert/Call volume** ▶ **1 Call alert volume** ▶ **A▼ or ⊗** ▶ **● [Select]**

   The volume can be selected from "Silent", "Level 1" - "Level 6" or "Steptone".

<Volume setting screen>

1 Alert/Call volume
2 Mail/Msg. alert vol.
3 GPS alert volume
4 i-concier ring alert
5 Alarm volume
6 αppli effect so···
7 ToruCa receive alert
8 Operation sound
9 Melody effect sound

[Alert/Call volume]
Adjusts call alert volume, and earpiece volume while on a call.
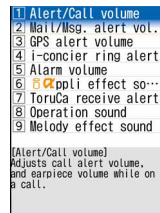
Point --------------------------------

- 🔇 appears on the stand-by display when "Silent" is set. 📳 appears when a vibrator for Call vibrate alert is also set.

Basic Operation

✎ Information

- You can set a call ring alert and image, a call vibrator operation pattern, and a light alert. 【@電話着信設定 (Call alert)】【@テレビ電話着信設定 (Videophone alert)】
- Incoming calls or alarms are notified with vibration, instead of a tone. 【@バイブレータ設定 (Vibrate alert/effect)】

Silent mode

This function cancels the sound emitted from FOMA terminal such as ring alert, Key/touch sound, Open/Close sound, alarm, or the sound for reading a code with Bar code reader, and an incoming call is notified with vibrator (vibration). Also, microphone is sensitized, and you can call in a small voice.

1 ⌗ **(1 sec. or more)**

🔔 appears on the stand-by display in Silent mode.

Canceling Silent mode : ⌗ (1 sec. or more)

<Stand-by screen while Silent mode is ON>

Point

• Shutter sound is emitted even in Silent mode.

Muting key/touch sound

You can turn off a sound to be emitted when pressing keys or touching the touch panel.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 1 **Alerts & Sounds** ▶ 1 **Ring alerts & Sounds** ▶ 6 **System sound**

In addition to Key/touch sound, you can mute Open/Close sound or change Shutter sound.

2 1 **Key/touch sound** ▶ 5 **OFF**

A message indicating key/touch sound is to be turned off appears, and then the screen shown to the right appears.

The tone can be selected from "1 Key/touch sound 1" - "4 Sol-fa".

```
1 Key/touch sound
2 Open/Close sound
3 Shutter sound
4 Movie camera sound

[Key/touch sound]
Sets sound for keypad and
touch operation.

Sound 1
```
<System sound setting screen>

✎ **Information**

• You can set Silent mode operations to each incoming call and alarm. 【⚫オリジナルマナーモード (Personalized silent mode)】

Setting the display

You can change the stand-by display, light, font size, etc.

Stand-by display

The default stand-by display is set according to Kisekae Tool, but you can customize the display by changing each display element such as stand-by display image, clock display or battery icon.

Selecting a stand-by display

<Example>   Setting a preinstalled image to the stand-by display

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices**▶ 2
Display▶ 1 **Stand-by display**▶ 1
Image/i-αppli▶ 1 **Vertical position or**
2 **Horizontal position**▶ 1 **Set image**
When Kisekae Tool is set, the screen shown to the right appears.

2 **"Yes"**▶ 6 **Preinstalled**▶ **Select an image**▶ **"Yes"**

<KisekaeTool cancel confirmation screen>

Setting a battery icon

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices**▶ 2
Display▶ 1 **Stand-by display**▶ 3
Battery icon
The screen shown to the right appears.

2 1 - 7
When Kisekae Tool is set, selecting other than 7 displays a confirmation screen for canceling Kisekae Tool. When pressing "Yes", the selected icon is set.

<Battery icon setting screen>
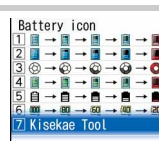
Select startup menu

Set the menu displayed when pressing MENU on the stand-by display.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices**▶ 2
Display▶ 2 **Menu preference**▶ 1
Select startup menu▶ 1 **Kisekae menu** - 3 **Shortcut menu**

<Startup menu setting screen>

Basic Operation

Information

・ You can set displaying/not displaying a clock on the stand-by display, clock style, clock layout, language for day of week, and time format.【 時計表示設定 (Clock display format)】
・ The stand-by display can be divided into several areas, to each of which you can make settings to display arrival information, schedule, calendar, list of notes or contents of a note.【 待受画面設定 (Stand-by display) ▷ カレンダー/待受カスタマイズ (Info/calendar layout)】

Font size

You can change a size of the characters in i-mode site, the mail creation screen, phonebook, etc.

<Example> **Changing font size collectively**

1. `MENU` ▶ `8` **Settings&NWservices** ▶ `2` **Display** ▶ `6` **Font & Language** ▶ `1` **Font size** ▶ `1` **All** ▶ `1` **Smallest - `7` Largest**

   For some font sizes selected, a confirmation screen for changing the MENU font size appears. When pressing "Yes", Kisekae Tool applicable to the selected font size can be selected.

Point
- When you change the font size at once but the items do not support the font size that is selected in All, the closest font size is set.

Privacy view

This function allows the display to be less-visible to the people around you. You can start/cancel Privacy view on screens including the stand-by display.

1. `MULTI` **(1 sec. or more)**
   Canceling Privacy view : `MULTI` (1 sec. or more)

Setting Machi-chara

You can set a character to be displayed on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

1. `MENU` ▶ `8` **Settings&NWservices** ▶ `2` **Display** ▶ `7` **Display Machi-chara** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ `📷` **[Set]**

Point
- Machi-chara does not appear when moving picture/i-motion or i-αppli is set for the stand-by display.
- Some Machi-chara change its actions according to time, arrival information, call duration, etc.

Display light time

You can set the duration, for which the display light is turned on.

<Example> **Setting "Normal use"**

1. `MENU` ▶ `8` **Settings&NWservices** ▶ `2` **Display** ▶ `4` **Display & Key light** ▶ `1` **Display light time**
2. `1` **Normal use** ▶ `1` **0 sec - `7` Always on**

Point
- When setting to "Phone setting" by selecting other than "Normal use" in Step 2, the lighting time set in "Normal use" applies.

Information

- You can set a visibility level in Privacy view. 【❷プライバシービュー (Privacy view) ▷ レベル設定 (Privacy view level)】
- You can set when the display light is turned off and adjust the brightness of the display light. You can also turn Keypad light ON/OFF, and select a color of the light. 【❷照明／キーバックライト設定 (Display & Key light) ▷ 画面オフ時間設定／明るさ調整／キーバックライト設定 (Light time-out/Brightness/Keypad light)】

Light setting

You can set light alerts for incoming calls or mails, new arrivals and missed calls.

Light alert

Set the lighting pattern and color for incoming call/mail or while talking.

<Example> Setting a light alert

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 2
Display ▶ 5 **Light alert**
In addition to light alert for incoming call/
mail, you can set it while talking or for
closing FOMA terminal.

2 1 **Light alert** ▶ **Set required items** ▶
■ **[Set]**

```
1 Light alert
2 Call session light
3 GPS light alert
4 IC card light
5 Open/Close light




[Light alert]
Sets light alert for incoming
call/message.
```
<Light setting screen>
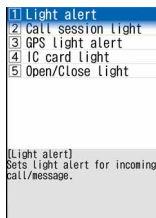
Indicator light

The light alerts you when missed calls, unread messages (including SMS) or arrival information exists.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 2 **Display** ▶ 3 **Color
& Action image** ▶ 5 **Info display & light** ▶ 2 **Indicator
light** ▶ 1 **ON** or 2 **OFF**

Kisekae Tool

You can set the stand-by display, menu, incoming/outgoing call screens, etc. at once with a predefined combination.

<Example> Setting preinstalled Kisekae Tool

1 MENU ▶ 5 **Data Box** ▶ 7 **Kisekae Tool** ▶ 2 **Preinstalled**
▶ **Move the cursor to a Kisekae Tool** ▶ ■ **[Set]**
To display the details, move the cursor to the Kisekae Tool, and
then press □.
To enlarge the images of the stand-by display and menu,
move the cursor to a Kisekae Tool, and then press ●.

```
White         1/2
☑ Stand-by display
☑ Stand-by(Horizon…
☑ Kisekae menu        VUI
☑ Battery icon        GIF
☑ Antenna icon        GIF
☑ Outgoing call img.
☑ Call alert image
☑ V.phone call image
☑ V.phone alert img.
☑ Outgoing msg img.
☑ Mail alert image
☑ Image msg alert
☑ Message retrieving
☑ Color theme
☑ Clock style
```
<Details screen>

```
White         1/7




```
<Combination image
screen>

2 **"Yes"**

✎ **Information**

- You can set FOMA terminal so that the stand-by displays switch, or
Silent mode and Privacy mode switch at a specified time. 【@ライフス
タイル設定 (Timed theme)】

Basic Operation

Power saving mode

You can set each light to "OFF" or shorten the lighting time to save battery consumption.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 2 **Display** ▶ 8 **Power saving mode** ▶ 1 **Saving mode ON/OFF**
Each time you select the option, ON/OFF switches.

Saving mode options

You can set options for Power saving mode.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 2 **Display** ▶ 8 **Power saving mode** ▶ 2 **Saving mode options** ▶ 1 **Std. saving** or 2 **Full saving**

Std. saving : Display settings such as the brightness of the display or keypad light, or light alerts are adjusted to save battery consumption.

Full saving : With Standard saving applied, some functions such as motion sensor, immobile sensor of Security lock, Pedometer/ACT monitor, etc. are restricted to save battery consumption.

Motion sensor

You can operate FOMA terminal by double-tapping (tapping it twice) or tilting it.

Setting Motion sensor

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 7 **Clock & Other** ▶ 6 **Motion sensor** ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷 **[Set]**
Setting Auto rotation to "Only selecting" enables/disables each function.

✤ Stopping an alarm/displaying details of arrival information

When FOMA terminal is closed and the alarm sounds, double-tapping the front or back side stops the alarm. When the clock is displayed on the sub-display, double-tapping the side displays details of arrival information.
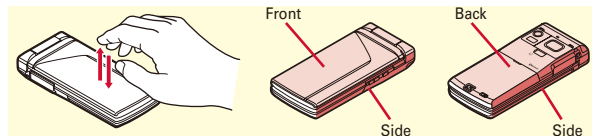
✤ Auto rotation/others

Tilting FOMA terminal in normal style switches the vertical/horizontal display for Browser, My Picture, 1Seg, moving picture files/i-motion, etc. (Auto rotation) In flip style, the vertical/horizontal display for the stand-by display, menu screens and each setting screens also switches.

Also, tilting FOMA terminal while holding ⏶ or ⏷ when Browser screen is displayed scrolls the screen or switches the vertical/horizontal display for the clock on the sub-display.

Security code of FOMA terminal

Security codes vary by functions. Be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If a security code is known to and misused by others, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for damages resulted from it. If you forget your security codes, you need to bring a document (a drivers license etc.) to identify your subscription, FOMA terminal and UIM to a docomo Shop. For details, contact the numbers for General Inquiries on the back of the instruction manual.

Terminal security code (Default : 0000)

The code is the security code to be used when changing settings or deleting all the items at once. To change the code, perform the following operation.

1 `MENU` ▶ `8` **Settings&NWservices** ▶ `4` **Security & Locks** ▶ `7` **Code & Fingerprint** ▶ `1` **Change security code** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Enter a new terminal security code** ▶ **Enter the new terminal security code in New security code-check field** ▶ `📷` **[Save]**

Point --

• If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned OFF.

PIN1/PIN2 code (At subscription : 0000)

The PIN1 code is the security code to be used when installing UIM or turning FOMA terminal on.

The PIN2 code is the security code to be used when requesting the issuance of a user certificate, resetting Total calls cost or resetting the total call costs.

To change either code, perform the following operation. When changing PIN1 code, set PIN1 code ON/OFF to "ON".

1 `MENU` ▶ `8` **Settings&NWservices** ▶ `4` **Security & Locks** ▶ `6` **UIM** ▶ `1` **Change PIN code** or `2` **Change PIN2 code** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Enter the current PIN code** ▶ **Enter the new PIN code in New PIN code and the New PIN code - check fields** ▶ `📷` **[Save]**

Point --

• To display the PIN code entry screen when turning power on, `MENU` ▶ `8` `4` `6` `3` `1`, and then set PIN1 code ON/OFF to "ON".
• Even if PIN2 code is locked by entering incorrect PIN2 code 3 times consecutively, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available; if PIN code is locked by entering incorrect PIN code 3 times consecutively, these operations are unavailable.
• If the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked by entering an incorrect code 3 times consecutively, enter the PIN unblocking key (PUK) provided at subscription. If UIM is locked after entering an incorrect PUK code 10 times consecutively, contact a docomo Shop.

Basic Operation

✤ **Network security code (At subscription : Set any code.)**

Network security code is required when DOCOMO identifies the subscriber at docomo Shop, docomo Information Center or "お客様サポート (user support)" or when you subscribe Network Services.
To change the code, "iMenu" in i-mode site ⇒ "お客様サポート (User support)" ⇒ "各種設定 (確認・変更・利用) (Settings (Check/Change/Use))".

✤ **i-mode password (At subscription : 0000)**

i-mode password is required to save to/delete My Menu, use Message Service, subscribe/cancel i-mode charged services, etc.

To change the password, "iMenu" in i-mode site ⇒"お客様サポート (User support)" ⇒ "各種設定 (確認・変更・利用) (Settings (Check/Change/Use))" ⇒ "ｉモードパスワード変更 (Change i-mode Password)".

✤ **microSD password**

You can set a password to microSD card. When using another terminal with the password-protected microSD card installed, setting a password to that terminal is also required. On PCs or terminals that do not have ability to set passwords, data in the microSD card cannot be used and the card cannot be formatted.
However, some microSD cards may not support this function.

✤ **Password (for children) (Default : 1111)**

This password is used as the password for children in Kid-safe mode. When entry of the password is required, you can alternatively enter the terminal security code or authenticate your fingerprint.
Kid-safe mode ⇒P44

Lock/Security

Fingerprint authentication

Instead of entering the terminal security code, you can authenticate yourself by sliding your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor. Once your fingerprint is registered, the fingerprint authentication screen appears when authentication is required.
Up to 10 fingerprints can be registered for authentication.

1. **MENU** ▶ **8** **Settings&NWservices** ▶ **4** **Security & Locks** ▶ **7** **Code & Fingerprint** ▶ **2** **Register fingerprint** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"OK"** ▶ **Slide your fingertip on the fingerprint sensor by following the instruction message** ▶ **Enter the name to register (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)** ▶ **[Save]**

Register finger print

Slide same fingertip to complete scan operation . (3 times)

<Fingerprint registration screen>
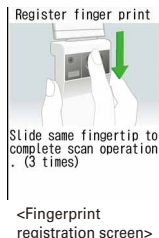
Point

・ To switch to the terminal security code entry screen, press MENU or the keypad on the fingerprint authentication screen (touch [ScrtyCd] for the touch operation).

Information

・ You can set FOMA terminal so that the terminal can authenticate users only with fingerprints. 【指紋のみ認証設定 (Fingerprint access)】
If authentication is disabled for any registered fingers due to your finger conditions, failure of the fingerprint sensor, etc. you need to bring a document (such as a drivers license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, FOMA terminal and UIM to a docomo Shop.

Various lock functions

Various lock functions are provided in FOMA terminal. Use them for your purpose.

Name	Descriptions
All lock	Any operations other than answering calls, receiving messages and turning power ON/OFF are unavailable. **Activate :** MENU ▶ 8 4 1 3 ▶ Authenticate **Deactivate :** Enter the terminal security code (When the fingerprint authentication is set, MENU ▶ Authenticate)
Self mode	All functions requiring communication are unavailable. **Activate/Deactivate :** CLR (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"
Personal data lock	Personal information such as Phonebook, messages or schedule is not displayed. **Activate/Deactivate :** MENU ▶ 8 4 1 4 ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1 or 2
Keypad dial lock	Calls can be made only by using phonebook. **Activate/Deactivate :** MENU ▶ 8 4 1 6 ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1 or 2
Side key hold	To prevent inadvertent operations, side keys are disabled when FOMA terminal is closed. **Activate/Deactivate :** MENU (1 sec. or more)
Lock on close	Any key operations other than side keys are locked when FOMA terminal is closed. **Activate :** MENU ▶ 8 4 1 1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷 **Deactivate temporarily :** Open FOMA terminal and authenticate

Name	Descriptions
Security lock	Touch operation or keypad operation is automatically locked when no operations are performed for the specified time after screen display goes off. **Activate :** MENU ▶ 8 4 1 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 📷 **Deactivate temporarily :** Press any key to turn on the display ▶ MENU ▶ Authenticate
Touch lock	Touch lock is automatically activated when making a call or talking on the phone to prevent inadvertent touch operations. **Activate/Deactivate :** On the outgoing call or talking screen, 🔒 (1 sec. or more)
IC card lock	Osaifu-Keitai, obtainment of ToruCa from IC card reader, iC transmission, etc are unavailable. **Activate :** ⊙ (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes" **Deactivate :** ⊙ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate
Privacy mode	You can set options for using personal information. • For the operation, refer to "使いかたガイド (Guide)" installed in this FOMA terminal.
Omakase Lock	The personal data of phonebook etc. or IC card function of Osaifu-Keitai is locked only by contacting DOCOMO in case FOMA terminal is misplaced etc. ■ **Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock** 📞 0120-524-360 Office hours : 24hours Omakase Lock can be set/canceled from My docomo site using a PC etc. • For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Incoming call restriction

There are some ways to restrict incoming calls.

Specifying Accept/Reject call for each phone number

Set each phonebook, and then activate settings of Accept/Reject call (setting of Specified caller).
When using this function, it is recommended that you use both Caller ID request and Anonymous caller.

1. $\boxed{Q}$ ▶ **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Move the cursor to a phonebook entry** ▶ $\boxed{\text{MENU}}$ ▶ $\boxed{3}$ **Edit/Settings** ▶ $\boxed{4}$ **Advanced settings** ▶ $\boxed{3}$ **Accept/Reject call** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Select a phone number** ▶ $\boxed{1}$ **Accept call - $\boxed{3}$ No setting**

2. **Following the operation above, on the stand-by display,** $\boxed{\text{MENU}}$ ▶ $\boxed{8}$ **Settings&NWservices** ▶ $\boxed{5}$ **Call & Answer** ▶ $\boxed{5}$ **Reject/Accept call** ▶ $\boxed{1}$ **Specified caller** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ $\boxed{1}$ **Cancel settings - $\boxed{3}$ Accept call**

Anonymous caller

For each reason for hiding caller ID, you can set a receiving operation.

1. $\boxed{\text{MENU}}$ ▶ $\boxed{8}$ **Settings&NWservices** ▶ $\boxed{5}$ **Call & Answer** ▶ $\boxed{2}$ **Anonymous caller** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ $\boxed{1}$ **Anonymous - $\boxed{3}$ Unavailable** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ $\boxed{\text{📷}}$ **[Set]**

Ring alert delay

To prevent prank calls such as one-ring phone scam or calls from anonymous callers, you can set FOMA terminal so that you will not answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook.

1. $\boxed{\text{MENU}}$ ▶ $\boxed{8}$ **Settings&NWservices** ▶ $\boxed{1}$ **Alerts & Sounds** ▶ $\boxed{5}$ **Ring alert delay** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ $\boxed{\text{📷}}$ **[Set]**

Unregistered caller

You can reject calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook.

1. $\boxed{\text{MENU}}$ ▶ $\boxed{8}$ **Settings&NWservices** ▶ $\boxed{5}$ **Call & Answer** ▶ $\boxed{5}$ **Reject/Accept call** ▶ $\boxed{2}$ **Unregistered caller** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ $\boxed{1}$ **ON** or $\boxed{2}$ **OFF**

Reset to default

Reset

You can restore functions in red characters on the menu list to the default settings. ⇒P86

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 7 **Clock & Other** ▶ 4 **Info & Reset** ▶ 5 **Reset** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Select an item to reset** ▶ 📷 **[Reset]** ▶ **"Yes"**

Delete all data

You can delete the saved or registered data in FOMA terminal, and restore the settings of each function to default.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices** ▶ 7 **Clock & Other** ▶ 4 **Info & Reset** ▶ 6 **Delete all data** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

All data is deleted while restarting. Do not turn power off until the stand-by display is displayed.

Point --
• Even after all data is deleted, the data registered by default is not deleted.
• Among Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, data of which is not saved to the IC card, "iD appli" is restored to the default by deleting all data, but the other αppli are deleted.
• i-αppli other than Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli are restored to the default by deleting all data, however, upgraded i-αppli is deleted.

Restricting usage by remote control

There are two services to restrict the functions of FOMA terminal by remote control.

●●●
Inquiries
DOCOMO business website
docomo Business Online
• From a PC
  http://www.docomo.biz
* May be unavailable for system maintenance.
●●●

✤ Initializing remotely
With subscription to use this function (Business mopera anshin manager), this service allows an administrator to request to initialize data (memory in phone/microSD card/UIM) in the target FOMA terminal.

✤ Remote customization
With subscription to use this function (Business mopera anshin manager), this service allows an administrator to request to remotely restrict or set ON/OFF to functions (camera function, lock setting, etc.) in the target FOMA terminal.

Point --
Check remote setting : MENU ▶ 8 7 4 2

Basic Operation

43

Kid-safe mode

You can restrict available functions so that you can let your children use FOMA terminal without anxiety.

Setting Kid-safe mode

You can set whether to use Kid-safe mode.
Before operating, set PIN1 code ON/OFF to "OFF".

1 **MENU ▶ 8 Settings&NWservices ▶ 4 Security & Locks ▶ 4 Kid-safe mode ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1 Kids mode setting ▶ 1 ON** or **2 OFF**
When "ON" is set, 😊 appears at the top of the display.

Changing a password (for children)

Before operating, set Kid-safe mode to "ON". The password that is the same as the terminal security code cannot be set.

1 **MENU ▶ 8 Settings&NWservices ▶ 4 Security & Locks ▶ 7 Code & Fingerprint ▶ 1 Change security code ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter a new terminal security code ▶ Enter the new terminal security code in New security code-check field ▶ 📷 [Save]**

Locking functions

You can lock outgoing calls, messages, 1Seg, the camera, i-mode/full browser, i-αppli, etc.
Before operating, set Kid-safe mode to "ON".

1 **MENU ▶ 8 Settings&NWservices ▶ 4 Security & Locks ▶ 4 Kid-safe mode ▶ Authenticate ▶ 2 function lock**
The screen shown to the right appears.

2 **Set required items**
Dial lock/Mail setting : When "Permit only" is set, calls/mails can be made/sent only to the parties registered to phonebook.
i-αppli lock : When "Permit only" is set, i-αppli cannot be downloaded. Only i-αppli in FOMA terminal can be used.

3 **📷 [Set]**

<Locking functions screen>

Point
- Even when Mail lock is set to "ON", incoming mails are automatically received. In this case, no incoming operation with tones or images is performed, or no arrival information is displayed.

Basic Operation

Making a call/videophone call

To specify a phone number to call, you can directly enter a phone number, or select it from Redial/Received calls, Recorded messages, voice memo while talking or phonebook.

Entering a phone number

Always enter area code even when calling from the same city.

1 **Enter a phone number (Up to 80 digits)▶ ⌒ (voice calls) or 📷 (videophone calls)▶ When ending the call, ⌒**

Using redial/received calls

Up to 30 items are recorded in each of Redial and Received calls. When the maximum is exceeded, older logs are overwritten first.

1 **Q (redial) or Ø (received calls)**
Icons in the list represent types of incoming/outgoing calls. Followings are major icons and their definitions.

Redial	1/1
11/10(Tu)10:00	
Hanako	
11/09(Mo)12:31	
03XXXXXXXX	
11/08(Su)20:55	
090XXXXXXXX	

<Redial screen>

Received calls	1/1
11/10(Tu)09:45	
Akiko	
11/09(Mo)15:00	
03XXXXXXXX	
11/08(Su)18:00	
090XXXXXXXX	

<Received call screen>

📞 : Voice call 📵/📵 : Missed call/Unchecked missed call
📹 : Videophone call 📼 / 📼 : Recorded message/Unchecked recorded message[*]

[*] If recorded message is deleted, this icon changes to missed call icon.

✏️ **Information**

• You can set the search method displayed when pressing Q on the stand-by display. 【②電話帳検索優先設定 (Default search setting)】

2 **Move the cursor to the party ▶ ⌒ (voice calls) or 📷 (videophone calls)**
To display the details of a party, move the cursor to the party, and then press ●.

Point

• DOCOMO videophone specifications conform to "3G-324M, an international standard prepared by 3GPP". The connection with the videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

Using phonebook

1 **Q**
The phonebook list of the Show all names is displayed by default.
To switch lines, press Ø.

2 **Move the cursor to the party ▶ ⌒ (voice calls) or 📷 (videophone calls)**
To create an i-mode mail, move the cursor to a party, and then press ✉.

あかさたなはまやらわ他	
Phbook(1/1)	
Akiko	A
Hanako	B
Haruko	A
Ichiro Mobile	B
Natsuko	AB

<Phonebook search result screen>

Point

• You can make calls using logs of mails, GPS, etc if phone numbers are saved in phonebook.

International calls

You can make international calls from Japan using WORLD CALL.

✤ WORLD CALL

"WORLD CALL" is the international call service available from DOCOMO mobile phones. You are subscribed to "WORLD CALL" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (Unless you request not to subscribe to it).

- No subscription or monthly charges apply.
- For details of "WORLD CALL" charges, available charging plans, etc, contact the numbers for General Inquiries on the back of this manual.
- To use international call services except DOCOMO service, contact the carrier for details.
- For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the other party's terminal connected through the international videophone line.

1 **Enter "010"**▶**Country code**▶**Enter a phone number without the leading "0" of the area code (City code)**▶ **☎** **(voice calls) or** **📷** **(videophone calls)**
In some countries and areas such as Italy, "0" is required.

Caller ID notification (Default : Notify)

You can notify your phone number (caller ID) to the other party's terminal when making a voice call.

1 **MENU** ▶ **8** **Settings&NWservices**▶**8** **NW Services**▶ **4** **Caller ID**▶**1** **Caller ID notification**▶**1** **Activate/ Deactivate**▶**1** **Notify**
Select "**2** Not notify" if you do not want to notify.

Point
- Caller ID is your important personal information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- If an announcement of requesting caller ID is heard when making a call, make a call again after setting your caller ID to "Notify".

✎ **Information**

- You can set whether to automatically convert an international prefix number, or whether to add a country code for a call made from overseas. Also, you can save/edit international prefix numbers and country codes. 【@国際ダイヤルアシスト設定 (Int'l call assist)】
- You can notify/hide your caller ID on the other party's terminal for each call. 【@発信者番号通知／非通知 (Notify/Hide) ▷ 186/184】
- You can set calling conditions each time you make a call. 【@発信オプション (Call option)】

Connect

Call Telephone

Receiving a voice call

Basic operation for receiving incoming calls is described here.
- Incoming call restriction ⇒P42

❶ Receive

You are notified of an incoming call with ring alert, light alert, the display, etc.

🔊 : Adjust the alert volume

🔼 : Stop the ring alert and the vibrator

❷ ⌜ (voice/videophone calls) or 📹 (videophone calls)

When receiving a videophone call in normal style, a substitute image is displayed on the other party's terminal.

To make a videophone call while seeing the other party, press 📹 to switch to the camera image, then rotate the display clockwise by 180 degrees to turn the camera toward you.

❸ When ending the call, ☎

Point
- When you cannot answer an incoming call, 📞 2 (The digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display. The incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in Received calls.

✎ Information
- You can set FOMA terminal so that you can answer an incoming voice call by pressing any key other than ⌜. 【@エニーキーアンサー設定 (Any key answer)】

Call Telephone

Operation during a call

You can use useful functions during a call.

On hold

A melody is played while on hold. For a videophone call, the videophone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.

❶ During a call, ⬤ [OnHold]

Point
Canceling the voice call on hold : ⬤ or ⌜
Canceling the videophone call on hold (send the image before on hold) : ⬤
Canceling the videophone call on hold (send the camera image) : 📹
Canceling the videophone call on hold (send the substitute image) : ✉/⌜

Listening volume

You can adjust listening volume during a call.

❶ During a call, 🔊 or 🔼🔽

Point
- This setting applies to Listen volume in Adjust volume.

✎ Information
- According to the volume of the other party or ambient noise, the other party's voice becomes easier to hear with 【@はっきりボイス (Voice clear)】, or the voice slows down with 【@ゆっくりボイス (Voice slowing)】.

Connect

47

When you cannot answer the call

Use an appropriate function according to a situation or place where you cannot answer a call.

Record message

When Record message is set to "ON", a greeting message is played and the caller can record message when you cannot answer the call.

1 A **(1 sec. or more)**▶1 **Record message**▶1 **ON**
🔲 appears on the stand-by display.

Point
- You can record up to 4 voice/videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call. When reaching the savable number, 🔲 appears on the stand-by display and Record message does not work. Delete unnecessary recorded messages.
- Even when Record message is not set to "ON", you can activate it only once by pressing A for 1 second or more while receiving a call.
- Even when the greeting message is being played or a message is being recorded, a call can be answered by pressing ⌐. However, the message before the call was answered is not recorded.
Playing a recorded message : A (1 sec. or more)▶2▶Select a note

Public mode

Public mode is an automatic answering service putting emphasis on manners in a highly public place or while driving a car.

Public mode (Drive mode)

When you receive an incoming call, an announcement is played to inform the other party of the reason you cannot answer the call and the request to call you back before the call ends.

1 ✻ **(1 sec. or more)**
🚗 appears on the stand-by display.

Point
- In Public mode (Drive mode), no receiving action is performed, and calls are recorded as Missed call.
Canceling : ✻ (1 sec. or more)

Public mode (Power OFF)

When you receive an incoming call while you are turning power off, an announcement is played to inform the other party of the reason you cannot answer the call and the request to call you back before the call ends.

1 **Enter "∗25251"**▶⌐
Even when Public mode (Power OFF) is set, no indicators such as icons appear on the display.

Point
Canceling : Enter "∗25250"▶⌐
Checking the settings : Enter "∗25259"▶⌐

Information
- When you cannot immediately answer a call, press ⌐ while receiving the call to put it on hold. When the call is put on hold, the other party hears a status message. For a videophone call, the videophone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.【応答保留 (On-hold)】

Network Service

You can use the DOCOMO network services below with FOMA terminal.

Service	Application	Monthly charge
Voice Mail service	Required	Charged
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
English guidance	Not required	Free
Multi Number	Required	Charged
2in1	Required	Charged
OFFICEED	Required	Charged
Public mode (Drive mode)	Not required	Free
Public mode (Power OFF)	Not required	Free
Melody Call	Required	Charged

- Network services are not available out of service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
- For subscription and details of the services, contact the numbers for General Inquiries on the back of this manual.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- "OFFICEED" is a service requiring subscription. For details, refer to DOCOMO's business website (http://www.docomo.biz/html/product/officeed/ (In Japanese only)).

Setting network service

The operations for major network services are as follows.

Service	Operating procedure
Voice Mail service	MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices**▶ 8 **NW Services**▶ 1 **Voice Mail**▶ 1 **Voice Mail service**▶ **Perform the next operation** **Activate :** 1 ▶ "Yes"▶ "Yes"▶ Enter ring time **Deactivate :** 3 ▶ "Yes" **Play messages :** 5 ▶ 1 **or** 2 ▶ "Yes"▶ Follow the guidance to operate
Call Waiting	MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices**▶ 8 **NW Services**▶ 2 **Call waiting/forward**▶ 1 **Call waiting**▶ **Perform the next operation** **Activate :** 1 ▶ "Yes" **Deactivate :** 2 ▶ "Yes"
Call Forwarding Service	MENU ▶ 8 **Settings&NWservices**▶ 8 **NW Services**▶ 2 **Call waiting/forward**▶ 2 **Call forwarding**▶ **Perform the next operation** **Activate :** 1 ▶ "Yes"▶ "Yes"▶ Enter a phone number▶ 📷 ▶ "Yes"▶ Enter ring time **Deactivate :** 2 ▶ "Yes"

Point --
- When ring time is set to "0 sec." for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding service, incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- To answer a call from another party during a call when call waiting is activated, press ⌗. When a party is put on hold, press 🔀 to switch the parties to talk to.

Connect

49

Services available for the FOMA terminal

Services available for the FOMA terminal	Phone No.
Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (Not provided for those who do not require Directory assistance service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged : telegram)	115 (no area code)
Time (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (charged)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (charged : service + call)	106 (no area code)

- Customers who use Call forwarding from a land-line phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile phone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or turned OFF due to the settings.
- This FOMA terminal is applicable to "Emergency Location Report". When making an emergency call to 110, 119, 118, etc., information of your location (location information) is automatically informed to an emergency call receiving organization such as police. For some locations and/or wave reception conditions, the emergency call receiving organization cannot recognize the correct location. When location information is notified, the name of the emergency call receiving organization the information is sent to appears on the stand-by display.

When the caller ID is hidden for the call, i.e., by appending "184" to the dialed number, none of location information or your phone number is notified; however, the organization may acquire the location information and phone number regardless of your settings, if they have determined that such information is necessary for the protection of life etc. The area and timing of implementing "Emergency Location Report" vary by the preparatory state of respective emergency call receiving organizations.
- When calling to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and your current location precisely since the police or fire department has to call you back for confirmation. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, do not move when making the call and do not turn OFF the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- For some areas you are calling from, you are not connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or land-line phone in that case.

Connect

Overseas use

You can talk with FOMA terminal and use i-mode overseas.

✤ International Roaming （WORLD WING）

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows you to make voice calls and access i-mode using network of affiliated telecommunications carriers even overseas. Before using this service, check its subscription status.

- The service is available in areas that 3G Network or GSM/GPRS Network covers. Also, it is available in countries or districts where 3G 850 MHz is applied. Check the service area.
- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. However, if you meet a following condition, subscription is required.
  - You declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it.
  - You subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005 but not to WORLD WING.
- There are some unavailable charging plans.
- Refer to the following documents before using FOMA terminal overseas.
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]"
  - DOCOMO International Services website
  - "海外ご利用ガイド" preinstalled in My Document in Data Box

Available services overseas

Available communication services vary by the telecommunications carrier and the network of the country you stay.

- Overseas usage fees (call fee and packet communication fee) differ from those in Japan.
- Some services may be unavailable depending on the telecommunications carrier or area. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

Communication services	Network		
	3G *1	GPRS *2	GSM
Voice call	○	○	○
Videophone call*3	○	×	×
i-mode/Full Browser*4	○	○	×
i-mode mail	○	○	×
SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel*5	○	○	×
i-concier*5, 6	○	○	×
i-Widget*5, 7	○	○	×
Position location of GPS*8	○	○	×
Packet communication (PC connection)*9	○	○	×

*1 When 🔆 appears, sending/receiving a voice call/SMS and Position location of GPS without packet communication are available. When 🔆 appears, all communication services except voice calls are available.

*2 When 🔆 appears, all communication services except voice and videophone calls are available.

Connect

51

*3 Make and receive international videophone calls to/from parties using certain overseas 3G telecommunications carriers or those using FOMA terminals overseas.

*4 i-mode services settings is required.
Connections from TVlink list to the data broadcasting site is included. Note that Activate 1Seg is unavailable overseas.

*5 Packet communication fee is charged each time you receive information. Also, auto update for Basic channel of i-Channel and communications by multiple applications of i-Widget are included.

*6 International Settings of i-concier is required.

*7 i-Widget roaming set is required.

*8 Using packet communication, the position is highly accurately located.

*9 64K data communication connecting (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

Making a call from overseas

Making an international call (including Japan)

1 ０ (1 sec. or more)
"+" is entered.

2 Country code ("81" to Japan) ▶ Enter a phone number without the leading "0" of the area code (City code) ▶ ｃ (voice calls) or ⓐ (videophone calls)
In some countries and areas such as Italy, "0" is required.

Making a call inside the country you stay

1 Enter a phone number ▶ ｃ (voice calls) or ⓐ (videophone calls) ▶ "No, use original"
The call may be made with no message displayed.

Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

1 ０ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Enter "81" ▶ Enter a phone number without the leading "0" of the area code (City code) ▶ ｃ (voice calls) or ⓐ (videophone calls)

Point
• The call is forwarded internationally from Japan even when staying in the same country as the party to be called, so enter "+" and the country code of Japan, "81".

Receiving a call inside the country you stay

1 A call is received ▶ ｃ (voice calls) or ｉα (videophone calls)

Point
• Regardless of the country, from which the call is made, the call is internationally forwarded from Japan. The caller is charged for call fees to Japan, and the receiver is charged for receiving the call.

Setting after returning to Japan

If FOMA terminal is not automatically connected to FOMA network after turning power on when you return to Japan, set Network search setting to "Auto" and 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

Connect

Sending mails

Only by subscribing to i-mode, i-mode mails can be exchanged not only with i-mode terminals but also via Internet.
- For details of i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 ✉ **(1 sec. or more)**
The screen shown below appears.

Receiver field
Subject field
Attachment field
Message text field

Total bytes of characters and decoration entered to text

<Mail creation screen>
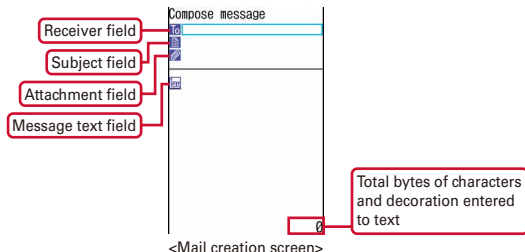
2 **Enter an address, title and text ▶ 📷 [Send]**
When sending is completed correctly, the mail is automatically saved in a folder of Outbox.

Point
Adding addresses (Simultaneous sending) : On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the receiver field ▶ ✉

Attachments

You can attach up to 10 files (images, sound, moving picture files/i-motion, etc.) of up to 2 Mbytes in total to a mail.

1 **On the mail creation screen, select the attachment field ▶ Select a file to attach ▶ Edit a mail ▶ 📷 [Send]**

Point
- Attachments not supported by the receivers' terminals may be deleted or may not be displayed/played correctly.
- Sending an attachment file of a big size may take time. After sending such file, a lot of mail in Outbox may be deleted.

Removing attachment : Move the cursor to the attachment ▶ ✉ ▶ "Yes"
Changing attachment : Move the cursor to the attachment ▶ 📷

Connect

✎ Information

- You can automatically add your signature to the mail.【 署名 (Signature)】
- When you do not know the receiver's address, you can enter his/her phone number as the address to send the mail.【 SMS】

Deco-mail/Decome-Anime

You can create amusing mails using decoration or images.

Deco-mail

You can change a font size or background color, or insert still images, Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pict. To decorate characters, specify decoration and then enter characters, or vice versa.

<Example>　Specifying decoration before entering characters

1 **Select the message text field on the mail creation screen** ▶ ✉ **[Deco.]**

2 **Select a decoration icon** ▶ **Decorate**
Decoration types are as follows.

🖼	Insert image	🔲A	Change a font color	A	Change a font size
🎨	Change a background color	:A:	Blink	ᴬ	Ticker
ᴬ	Swing	📄	Word alignment	🗐	Insert line

3 **Edit a mail** ▶ 📷 **[Send]**

Point

• On the character entry screen, press MENU ▶ 0 to preview the decoration result. The bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter is displayed in the lower-right portion of the preview screen. To return to the previous screen, press ●.

Information

Decome-Anime

You can create expressive mails using Flash graphics with messages or images inserted.

1 ✉ ▶ 3 **Compose Decome-Anime**

2 **Select Decome-Anime message text field** ▶ **Move the cursor to template**
To preview, press ●.

3 📷 **[Load]**

4 **Edit the text or image**
Changing a template : MENU ▶ 1 Decome-Anime ▶ "Yes" ▶ Move the cursor to template ▶ 📷 [Load]

5 📷 **[Complete]** ▶ **Edit a mail** ▶ 📷 **[Send]**

<Mail template list screen>
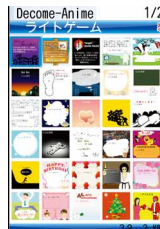
Point

• To preview, load the template, move the cursor to the Decome-Anime text field or the Decome-Anime edit screen, and then press ✉. To return to the previous screen, press ✉.

• You can easily create Deco-mail or Decome-Anime using templates stored by default. 【🔍メールテンプレート (Mail template)】

Receiving mails

No specific operations or settings are required for receiving mails (mail automatic reception).

1 **Receive i-mode mails**
The screen shown to the right appears.

2 1 **Mail ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail**

Blinking

<Reception result screen>

Point

Checking a mail in the mailbox : ⌨ ▶ 1 or 4 or 5 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

Checking new messages

You can make inquiry for any i-mode mail delivered while you were out of service area or the power was turned OFF.

1 ⌨ ▶ ⌨ **[CheckMsg]**

Replying to mails

1 **Move the cursor to a mail on the list screen of received mails ▶ 📷 [Reply] ▶ 1 Compose Message - 6 OK ▶ Edit a mail ▶ 📷 [Send]**

Auto-sort method

Sent/received mails can be automatically sorted.

1 ⌨ ▶ 9 **Mail settings ▶ 2 Sort method ▶ 1 Auto-sort ON/OFF ▶ Set each option to "ON" ▶ 📷 [Set]**

2 2 **Inbox sort or** 3 **Outbox sort ▶ 📷 [Add] ▶ Set sort method ▶ Select the folder to sort ▶ Select a priority**

Connect

✎ Information

• You can check the subject of a mail in the i-mode Center and then specify if you receive the mail or delete it without receiving. 【 ⓠ メール選択受信 (Receive option setting)】

Early warning "Area Mail"

This is a service that you can receive emergency earthquake flash report etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency. i-mode subscription is not required.

Receive setting

You can set if you receive Area Mail.

1 ⌨ ▶ 7 **SMS/Area Mail** ▶ 2 **Early warning "Area Mail" setting** ▶ 1 **Receive setting** ▶ **Read the notice** ▶ **Select the option field** ▶ 1 **YES** or 2 **NO** ▶ ⚬ **[Set]**

Receiving Area Mail

📧 turns on, and you are notified of reception with light alert, the dedicated buzzer alarm and vibrate alert.

Point

- Area mail cannot be received during a call or when Omakase lock is activated.

Information

- You can set the beep time, or the alert method when receiving Area Mail in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode). 【◎緊急速報「エリアメール」(Early warning "Area Mail") ▷ 設定 (Settings)】

Phonebook new entry

There are two types of phonebook: FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook. The instruction to save information to FOMA terminal phone book, which can contain more information , is covered here.

1 ⌨ **(1 sec. or more)** ▶ **Enter a name**
The screen shown to the right appears.

2 **Set required items**
+In addition to items in the screen shown to the right, you can save "Job title" and "URL".

3 ⚬ **[Save]**

```
New entry              1/2
No.010
Hanako          NO IMAGE
Hanako
[Select/Shoot image]
★ グループなし
☎ [Phone number]
✉ [Mail address]
🎂 [Birthday]
✏ [Note]
〒 [PostalCode/Address]
▶ [Location info]
🏢 [Company name]
```
<New data entry of phonebook>

Point

Editing a phonebook entry : ⌨ ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ MENU ▶ 3 1 ▶ Select an item and edit ▶ ⚬ ▶ "Overwrite" or "New entry"

Deleting a phonebook entry : ⌨ ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ MENU ▶ 4 ▶ 1 or 2 (▶ Authenticate to delete all items) ▶ "Yes"

Saving a UIM phonebook entry : MENU ▶ 4 4 ▶ Enter a name ▶ Set required items ▶ ⚬

Information

- You can set receiving actions for each phone number or mail address in FOMA terminal phonebook. 【◎個別着信設定 (Alert by contact)】
- You can add/delete a group, and set calling/receiving actions for each phonebook group (except for "No group"). 【◎グループ別発着信設定 (Alert/Image by group)】

Displaying i-mode site/website

With i-mode, you can use services such as site connection, Internet connection or i-mode mail by the display of i-mode terminal. You can use Full Browser to display websites created for a PC.

- i-mode is a charged service requiring subscription.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

••••
- The contents of sites and Internet websites are generally protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a site or website cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- When installing a UIM except yours or you turn ON FOMA terminal without UIM, still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received by mail, screen memos and MessageR/F for some models cannot be displayed or played.
- When data with UIM operation restriction is set for the stand-by display or ring alert, replacing UIM with another one or turning the power ON with no UIM installed changes the settings back to the default.
- i-mode and Full Browser have different charging systems. It is recommended that you subscribe to i-mode packet flat-rate service because a high packet communication fee is required to use Full Browser according to data communication volume.

•••

Displaying i-mode website

1 `ｉα` ▶ **Select an item to view**
During i-mode communication, 📶 blinks at the top of the display.

2 **When quitting viewing a site,** `─` ▶ **"Yes"**
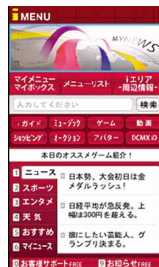
Displaying web pages designed for PC

1 `MENU` ▶ `2` **i-mode** ▶ `*` **Full Browser Home**
A confirmation screen for using Full Browser appears by default.

2 **After reading a website,** `─` ▶ **"Yes"**

Switching browsers

Switching i-mode to Full Browser : While a site is displayed, `MENU` ▶ `5` `2`

Switching Full Browser to i-mode : While a website is displayed, `MENU` ▶ `7` `2`

✎ **Information**

- You can change actions of i-mode and Full Browser in i-mode settings. 【🔍 iモード／フルブラウザ (i-mode/Full Browser) ▷ iモード設定 (i-mode settings)】

Search

57

Useful functions

URL entry

1 `MENU` ▶ `2` **i-mode** ▶ `5` **Enter URL** ▶ `1` **Enter URL** ▶
Enter a URL (up to 2,048 one-byte characters) ▶
`1` **i-mode Browser in the Browser type field or** `2` **Full Browser** ▶ `📷` **[Connct]**

When you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen, the confirmation screen does not appear again.

Bookmark

You can bookmark frequently visited sites or websites to quickly display them the next time you want to visit.

Saving : While a site or website is displayed, `MENU` ▶ `1` `2` ▶ Enter a title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) ▶ `📷` ▶ Select a folder where the bookmark is added

Displaying : `MENU` ▶ `2` `2` ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a bookmark

Screen memo

Currently displayed contents of a site or website can be saved as a screen memo or captured image.

Saving : While a site or website is displayed, `MENU` ▶ `2` `2` ▶ "Yes"

Displaying : `MENU` ▶ `2` `3` ▶ Select a screen memo

Point
• To save the captured image only, select "Only displayed" in the last step of saving the screen memo.

RSS reader

You can collect the latest information of websites by saving RSS to RSS reader.

Saving : While a website is displayed, `MENU` ▶ `0` `2` ▶ Select RSS ▶ "Yes"

Displaying : `MENU` ▶ `2` `9` ▶ Select a channel ▶ Select an item

Using link functions

You can make calls or send mail from link items.

1 **Display a site or website** ▶ **Move the cursor to a link item** ▶ `●` **[Select]**

Depending on the selected item, you can do the following :

Phone number（Phone To（AV Phone To）) : Make a call with some conditions.

Mail address (Mail To) : Create an i-mode mail and send it to the selected mail address.

Phone number (SMS To) : Create SMS and send it to the selected phone number.

URL (Web To) : Connect to the site or website.

1Seg information (Media To) : Watch 1Seg or make a recording reservation.

Viewing and operating screen

In sites and websites, as with Internet websites on your PC, you can enter characters, jump to the linked page, select radio buttons or check boxes.

Scrolling : 🎮
Scrolling successively : 🎮 (1 sec. or more)
Changing pages : `ix` [Back]/ `✉` [Next]
Switching tabs : `A`/`▽`
Closing a tab/Ending a browser :
`CLR` ▶ "Yes"

Status, Title/URL

<Full Browser screen>

Pointer
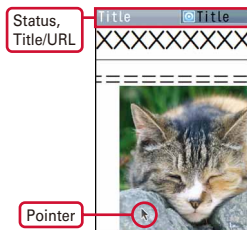
Operating the browser screen

When a site or website is displayed, you can perform operations by pressing `MENU` or `📷`.

To do	Operation
Connect to the previously displayed page	`MENU` ▶ `3` ▶ Select a URL
Connect to iMenu or Full Browser	`MENU` ▶ `4`
Reload information	`MENU` ▶ `6`[*1] or `5`[*2]
Display a URL	`MENU` ▶ `7`[*1] or `6`[*2] ▶ `3`
Show/hide the pointer	`MENU` ▶ `8``5` ▶ `1` or `2`
Show/hide the guide area	`MENU` ▶ `8``8`

To do	Operation
Set the displayed website to Home[*2]	`MENU` ▶ `8``0` ▶ "Yes"
Send a URL with i-mode mail	`MENU` ▶ `9` ▶ `1` or `2`
Open/close/switch tabs	`📷` ▶ `1` ▶ `1` - `3`
Switch pages, zoom[*2]**, drag, select text scope or paste, etc**	`📷` ▶ `2` ▶ `1` - `9`[*1] or `1` - `0`[*2]
Change a font size	`📷` ▶ `3` ▶ Select a font size
Search for a character string	`📷` ▶ `4` ▶ Enter text in the search text entry field (Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters) ▶ `📷`
Display the visit history/a list of tabs	`📷` ▶ `5`
Display PagePilot screen (the entire page)	`📷` ▶ `6`
Switch the vertical/horizontal display	`📷` ▶ `7` ▶ `1` - `3`
Add to phonebook	Move the cursor to a phone number or mail address▶ `📷` ▶ `8` ▶ `1` or `2`
Save an image	`📷` ▶ `9` ▶ `1` - `5`

*1 When using i-mode
*2 When using Full Browser

Search

This is a service that the information such as news or weather is distributed to terminals compatible with i-Channel. The information is automatically received, and a ticker appears on the stand-by display. You can display the channel list by pressing `CLR`. Two types of i-Channel shown below are available. (In Japanese only)

● **Basic Channel**

The channel is provided by DOCOMO, and the packet communication fee for automatically updating the distributed information is not charged.

● **Okonomi (Favorite) channel**

The channel is provided by an IP (Information Provider), and the packet communication fee for automatically updating the distributed information is separately charged.

When viewing detail information in Basic Channel or Okonomi Channel, a packet communication fee is separately charged. For overseas use, packet communication fee is charged for both automatic update and viewing detail information.

• i-Channel is a charged service requiring subscription. i-mode subscription is required for the service.

• For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

To view the detail information of the ticker displayed, perform the following operation.

1 **On the character entry screen,** `CLR` ▶ **Select a channel**

The site is connected and the detail information appears.

Point

• When the detail information of i-Channel is displayed, the same operations as the ones when i-mode sites or websites are available.⇒P59

Information

• You can change the display options of the i-Channel ticker. 【 i チャネル (i-Channel) ▷ i チャネル設定 (i-Channel setting)】

Using Map/GPS function

• • • •

- This function is unavailable as a navigation device for aircraft, vehicles or persons or as high-precision location surveying GPS. DOCOMO is not liable to any purely economic damages including troubles, if any, caused by missing opportunities of viewing positioning results or making communications due to failures or malfunctions of FOMA terminal or external events such as power interruption (including battery exhaustion) in using FOMA terminal for purposes including but not limited to the above.
- Because GPS is managed by U.S. Department of Defense, GPS wave conditions may be controlled (accuracy degraded or wave stopped) for security reasons of the U.S. And, wave conditions differ by satellite locations; therefore, positioning operations in the same location under the same environmental conditions may not yield the same result.
- Because GPS uses waves transmitted from satellites, waves may not be received or become hard to be received, resulting in an error of 300 m or more in location information.
- When using Location request and Notify location functions, check instructions and precautions given in website of GPS service providers and NTT DOCOMO. And, you may be charged for using these functions.
- The GPS function except Position location is unavailable out of service area.

• • •

Map

You can start GPS compatible i-αppli to display maps.

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 7 **Map/GPS** ▶ 1 **Map**

Point
- i-αppli set in Select map in Map setting starts. "地図アプリ (Map Application)" is set by default.

Position location

You can check where you are. No packet communication fee applies for positioning of Position location, but a packet communication fee is required separately with map displayed using location information.

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 7 **Map/GPS** ▶ 6 **Position location**

When positioning is in progress, 📡 blinks. When positioning is completed, the position location menu appears. From the menu, you can select options to read map, use GPS compatible i-αppi, display the mail creation screen on which location information is pasted, add to phonebook, etc.

```
Position location
Position located.
Accuracy:★☆☆
1 Read map
2 Run Map/GPS αppli
3 Paste to mail
4 Add to phonebook
5 Update phonebook
6 Add to image
7 Check loc. info
```
<Location information usage menu>

Search
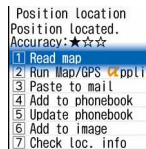
Information

- You can set FOMA terminal so that location information can be provided upon request from other set parties. This service requires a separate subscription to use. And, you may be charged for using the service. 【@GPS ▷ 位置提供 (Location request)】
- Various i-αppli that are compatible with Map/GPS function are stored by default. 【@GPS対応ⅰアプリ (GPS compatible i-αppli)】

•••

Your current location is automatically sent to service providers on a regular basis (approximately once in every 5 minutes), which allows you to services that deliver information about the weather or shops around where you are, or sightseeing information.

- Set an AUTO-GPS-compatible service from its AUTO-GPS-compatible i-αppli.
- When All lock, Personal data lock, Self mode, or Omakase lock is activated, the AUTO-GPS function is unavailable.
- When using the AUTO-GPS function, check instructions and precautions given in website of GPS service providers and NTT DOCOMO. And, you may be charged for using these services.
- Note that more power is consumed in FOMA terminal due to a regular communication.

•••

Setting services provided by DOCOMO

To use services provided by DOCOMO, set whether to send your location information to DOCOMO on a regular basis. These services require separate subscriptions to use.

1 `MENU` ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 7 **Map/GPS** ▶ 0 **AUTO-GPS** ▶ 1 **DOCOMO service set** ▶ "On" or "OFF"

Setting AUTO-GPS

Set whether to use the AUTO-GPS function.

1 `MENU` ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 7 **Map/GPS** ▶ 0 **AUTO-GPS** ▶ 2 **AUTO-GPS setting** ▶ 1 **ON** or 2 **OFF**

Setup service list

Display a list of the names of i-αppli (the service name), to which AUTO-GPS service information is set, and its status.

1 `MENU` ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 7 **Map/GPS** ▶ 0 **AUTO-GPS** ▶ 3 **Setup service list**

Canceling the service (including the AUTO-GPS function) :
Move the cursor to the name of i-αppli (the service name) ▶ `MENU` ▶ 1 Cancel ▶ "Yes"

Information

- You can set FOMA terminal so that the AUTO-GPS function will stop when the battery level gets low.【@GPS ▷ 低電力時動作設定(Low battery setting)】

Search

Camera

Viewing shooting screen

You can shoot either normal style or flip style.

<Example>

① Auto optimized shooting mode icon
②
③
④

*Shown images are in normal style

<Still image shooting screen>

<Moving picture shooting screen>

① Auto optimized shooting mode icon • To fix the currently detected scene, touch the icon.	② Zoom ratio • With 🔍, display the zooming adjustment panel to zoom in/out.
③ ᴴ▪ : Save to 🔲 : Recording Type 🔅 : Light 🌼 : Macro shooting 🕘 : Auto timer 🔳 : Face detection/Smile finder 🔖 : Compatible mode Indicator, Counter	④ 🔲 : Scene mode/effect 🔆 : Brightness 🔲 : White balance 🔲 : Frame 🔲 : Shake reduce 🔲 : Skew correction 🔲 : Continuous/Panorama FINE : Image quality 🔲 : Quality ∞ : Size restrictions 480×960 : Image size • You can change the settings by pressing 🔘 on the shooting screen.

Camera

Shooting still images/moving pictures

You can shoot still images/moving pictures with the camera in FOMA terminal.

Shooting still images

1 📷

2 **Point the camera at the object, ● [Shoot] or 🎵**
In flip style, touch [Shoot].
The touched location is focused.

3 **● [Save] or 🎵**

Shooting moving pictures

1 📷 **(1 sec. or more)**

2 **Point the camera at the object, ● [Shoot] or 🎵**

3 **When you want to stop shooting, ● [Stop] or 🎵**

4 **● [Save] or 🎵**

Point

• If battery power is low before saving shot image, the shot image is discarded.
• If FOMA terminal is left in a warm place or exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, images to be shot may be deteriorated.
• If no operations are performed for approximately 3 minutes during shooting stand-by, the camera ends.
• F-01B can shoot still images and moving pictures in the water of a swimming pool. It is recommended that you switch Scene mode/effect to "Underwater". Before shooting underwater, carefully read the mention of waterproof. ⇒P17

Switching still images/moving pictures : On the shooting screen, 🔳

Enjoy

63

Shooting still images in various procedures

On the still image shooting screen, you can switch shooting procedures from the submenu.
Below are major shooting procedures.

Shooting procedure	Effects and procedures
Scene mode/effect	The camera detects a subject, switches to the optimized scene and then focus the subject (Auto optimized shooting mode). **Setting scene mode/effect :** MENU ▶ 1 ▶ Select required items
Smile finder	When a SmileRate of shooting subjects reaches specified rate, a still image is shot. **Setting SmileRate :** MENU ▶ 3 2 ▶ Select SmileRate
Auto timer	Use this function for not only shooting yourself but also preventing hand shake. **Setting the remaining time in seconds before shutter clicks :** MENU ▶ 5 ▶ Select seconds
Continuous/ 4 frames/ Panorama shooting	You can specify the number of frames for continuous and 4 frames shooting, and shoot a panorama view using the camera's auto-connecting technology. **Selecting a shooting procedure :** MENU ▶ 6 ▶ Select a shooting procedure

Information

- The camera can track the subject 【◎トラッキングフォーカス (Tracking focus)】 or detect a registered face 【◎サーチミーフォーカス (Search me focus)】.
- You can change various shooting settings such as image size, image quality, number of images for continuous shooting, auto-save, location to save or shutter tone. 【◎カメラ (Camera) ▷ 静止画詳細設定 (Image settings)】

Viewing and editing still images/moving pictures

Still images/moving pictures are saved to Data Box.

1 MENU ▶ 5 Data Box▶ For still images, 1 My Picture or for moving pictures, 4 i-motion/Movie▶ "Camera" or a created folder▶ Select data

Point

Creating a mail with attachment : On the list screen, move the cursor to data ▶ ☑

Setting a file to the stand-by display : On the list screen or displayed screen, move the cursor to data ▶ MENU ▶ 2 1

Graffiti

You can decorate still images or characters with stamps, etc.

1 MENU ▶ 5 Data Box▶ 1 My Picture▶ "Camera" or a created folder▶ Select data

2 ☐ [Graffiti]▶ Touch the palette to operate
Decoration types are as follows.

文字	Select the font size and color before touching [確定 (OK)]	スタンプ	Select the stamp or the image in My Picture before touching [確定 (OK)]
ライン	Select the thickness and color before touching [確定 (OK)]	消しゴム	Delete the decoration.

3 **Touch or slide to specify a location▶ Touch [完了 (Complete)]**

Information

- You can save still images/moving pictures to microSD card (⇒P76), and sort them in created folders or albums. 【◎フォルダ (Folder) ▷ 追加／削除 (Add/Delete)】

Watching 1Seg

●●●
● Using 1Seg

1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc. A communication fee for receiving video picture and sound is not required. Contact NHK for details on your NHK viewing fees.

* For viewing "Data broadcasting site", "i-mode site", etc., packet communication fees are charged. Some sites require information fees (i-mode pay sites).

* For details of "1Seg" service, refer to the following websites.
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
PC : http://www.dpa.or.jp/
i-mode : http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

* 1Seg is unavailable overseas.

● Radio waves

1Seg is one of the broadcast services and a different type of radio waves (airwaves) from that of FOMA service is received. In the following cases, 1Seg may not work correctly.

・ A place far from the tower that the airwaves are sent from
・ Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings
・ Tunnel, underground or far back from a building

* To receive stronger radio waves, try to move FOMA terminal closer or further from your body, or move to another location.

● Screen appearing when using 1Seg for the first time

A confirmation screen for disclaimers appears. If you agree and then press "OK", the confirmation screen does not appear again.

●●●

To watch 1Seg, you need to create a channel list and select the area you watch 1Seg.

Creating a channel list using preset (for the first-time creation)

A list of broadcasting stations and channels that are pre-registered to FOMA terminal is loaded.

1 |MENU| ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 9 **1Seg** ▶ 7 **Channel list** ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Use preset"

Selecting "Auto setting" searches for broadcasting stations and channels that can be received in your current location.

2 **Select an area** ▶ "Yes"

Setting a channel list

When you have multiple channel lists or move to another area, you need to switch the channel lists.

1 |MENU| ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 9 **1Seg** ▶ 7 **Channel list** ▶ **Move the cursor to a channel list** ▶ |✉| **[Set]**

A list of channel numbers appears. To watch a channel, move the cursor to the channel, and then press |●|.

Starting 1Seg

1 |wTV| **(1 sec. or more)**

Point
・ Storage area is an area dedicated to 1Seg only in the terminal. Information, which is saved according to instructions of data broadcasting, may be displayed when viewing data broadcasting sites or sent to TV broadcasting enterprises (stations). When "No" is selected in a confirmation screen for initializing the storage area, services using the storage area are unavailable.

Enjoy

Viewing and operating the watching screen

You can watch 1Seg in full screen, or divide the screen to watch the data broadcasting.

<Horizontal display (movie with data broadcasting)>

Selecting a channel : ⓪ - ⑨ , ✳ , ♯
Switching the watching screen : ☎
Adjusting the volume : ⒜ⓥ
Starting/stopping video recording : ⓘⓧ (1 sec. or more)

* When you press ☎ when you end recording, you are prompted to select the option to end watching (but recording continues) or the option to end watching/recording.

Recording still images : ⓘⓧ

Point

• Pressing MENU while watching displays the submenu, from which you can reserve watching/recording, set OFF timer, use Smooth image, turn 1Seg Eco-mode on/off, etc.

Displaying key function help : While watching, MENU ▶ ⑨

Watching reservation/Recording reservation

You can automatically activate 1Seg watching or recording, or set the alarm to notify you of start of a program.

1. MENU ▶ ⑥ **LifeKit** ▶ ⑨ **1Seg** ▶ ④ **Set/Timer list**

2. MENU ▶ ① **Set new timer** ▶ **Select timer option**
   When selecting "Manual reception" or "Manual recording", you proceed to set the reservation details such as time and date or channel.
   Selecting "By program guide" activates program guide i-αppli. When you reserve watching or recording a program by selecting it in the program guide i-αppli, the reservation information is saved and displayed on the setting screen.

3. 📷 **[Save]**

Point

• When recording a long program, specify the saving location that has more free space in "REC setting" on the recording reservation screen.

Playing a recorded program

1. MENU ▶ ⑤ **Data Box** ▶ ✳ **1Seg** ▶ **Select the location of the recorded program** ▶ **Select the data**

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service which automatically distributes a program of up to approximately 1 hour at night. You can also enjoy high-quality video program of up to approximately 30 minutes.

● ● ●

- Music&Video Channel is a charged service requiring subscription. Subscriptions to i-mode and i-mode packet flat-rate services are required for the service.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some programs besides Music&Video Channel service fee.
- If UIM is used on a Music&Video Channel incompatible FOMA terminal after subscribing to Music&Video Channel, Music&Video Channel cannot be used. Note that the service fee is charged unless Music&Video Channel is unsubscribed.
- Program setting and downloading are unavailable during international roaming[*]. Stop distribution of programs before leaving Japan. When you return to Japan, resume distribution of programs.
- [*] Note that attempting program setting or downloading during international roaming requires packet communication fee for i-mode connection.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

● ● ●

Setting programs

To set programs, registering Music&Video Channel program site in My Menu may be required.

1 MENU ▶ 9 **MUSIC** ▶ 2 **Music&Video Channel**

The screen shown to the right appears.

2 "Set program" ▶ Set a program according to instructions on the screen

<Music&Video Channel screen>

Playing a program

1 MENU ▶ 9 **MUSIC** ▶ 2 **Music&Video Channel** ▶ Select a program

The following operations are available on the player screen.

Pausing/Playing : ● [PAUSE/PLAY] or 🎵
Adjusting volume : 🎛 or ▲▼
Rewinding/Fast forwarding : ◄► (1 sec. or more)
Jumping to the beginning of the chapter :
When the program is played for 3 sec. or more, ◄► or ▲ (1 sec. or more)

<Music&Video Channel player screen>

Jumping to the previous chapter : When the program is played within 3 sec., ◄► or ▲ (1 sec. or more)
Jumping to the next chapter : ◄► or ▼ (1 sec. or more)

Enjoy

MUSIC Player

You can play Chaku-uta full® downloaded from a site and Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files imported from music CDs, the Internet, etc. to a PC. For details of MUSIC Player, refer to NTT DOCOMO website. For Windows Media Player, contact the manufacturer of your PC.

Downloading Chaku-uta full®

1 **Display a site▶Select Chaku-uta full®▶"Save"▶Enter a name to display (Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters)▶ 🔲 [Set]**

Saving WMA file on a PC to micro SD

For connection to a PC, FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required. For details, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM.

1 **MENU ▶ 6 LifeKit▶ 2 Ir/iC/PC connection▶ 5 USB mode settings▶ 3 MTP mode▶"Yes"**

2 **With Windows Media Player activated, connect FOMA terminal to a PC using USB cable▶Send WMA file from the PC**

Playing music data

1 **MENU ▶ 9 MUSIC▶ 1 MUSIC Player ▶ Select a folder or playlist▶Select the music data**

The following operations are available on the player screen.

Pausing/Playing : ● [PAUSE/PLAY] or 🎵

Adjusting volume : 🕹 or ⬆⬇

Rewinding/Fast forwarding : 🔄 (1 sec. or more)

<MUSIC Player screen>

Jumping to the beginning of the song : When the song is played for 3 sec or more, 🔄 or ⬆ (1 sec. or more)

Jumping to the beginning of the previous song : When the song is played within 3 sec, 🔄 or ⬆ (1 sec. or more)

Jumping to the beginning of the next song : 🔄 or ⬇ (1 sec. or more)

Adding to Quick playlist : 🎵 (twice quickly)

Stopping : 🎵 (1 sec. or more)

Point

• When downloading music data from Internet websites etc., check the use conditions.
• Music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card is allowed for personal use only. When using the music data, take extreme care not to infringe intellectual property rights of a third party such as copyrights etc.
• "Chaku-uta full" is registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

●●●
i-αppli is a software for i-mode compatible mobile phones, which updates the information of stock price or weather automatically, or provides games that can be played without connecting to sites. i-Widget is a convenient function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (Widget Appli) such as calculator, clock and stock price information with the i-Widget key (⬚ʷᵀᵛ⬚). Either i-αppli or i-Widget can be downloaded from i-mode site or sites provided by IPs (Information Providers). For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- When downloading or displaying i-Widget screen, etc. a packet communication fee is separately charged.
- When i-Widget screen is displayed, multiple Widget Appli may communicate.
- A packet communication fee for overseas use differs from the one in Japan.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the information set in Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli (IC card).

●●●

Downloading

1 **Display a site▶Select i-αppli▶After completion of downloading, "Yes" or "No"**
Downloaded i-αppli is saved to "My folder" of Software list.
When Message i-αppli is downloaded, the folders for Message i-αppli are automatically created in the folder list.

Starting i-αppli

1 **⬚ⁱα⬚ (1 sec. or more)▶Select a folder▶Select i-αppli**

Point
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli : MENU▶⬚*⬚⬚1⬚▶Select i-αppli
Starting GPS compatible i-αppli : MENU▶⬚6⬚⬚7⬚⬚5⬚▶Select i-αppli

Start i-Widget

1 **⬚ʷᵀᵛ⬚▶Select Widget Appli**

Enjoy

✎ Information
- If you delete stored i-αppli, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.
  "@Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters)" (as of September, 2009)
  iMenu ⇒ メニューリスト (Menu list) ⇒ ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) ⇒ @Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)
  *The access method may be changed without previous notice.

QR code for site access

Playing i-motion/Movie

You can obtain i-motion/movie (images, sound, etc) from sites or websites.

✤ Playable i-motion

Type	Playing action
Standard type (can be saved[*])	While the i-motion data is downloaded, it is played. • The downloaded i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion which is played after entire data is downloaded.
	After the entire i-motion data is downloaded, it is played.
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	While the i-motion data is downloaded, it is played. • After the i-motion data is played, it is deleted.

[*] Some i-motion cannot be saved.

✤ Playable movies

Type	Distribution method	Playing action
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Real-time distribution	The movie is distributed in real time. • Pausing/Resuming play/Moving play position are unavailable.
	On-demand distribution	Distribute movies that are prepared in advance.

Downloading i-motion/movies

1 **Select i-motion/movie while site or website is displayed**
Playback starts while data is downloaded or when the download is completed.

Point
• Note that communication of a large amount of data, such as downloading a movie, requires high charges.

Playing moving picture/i-motion

1 **MENU ▶ 5 Data Box ▶ 4 i-motion/Movie ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion**
The following operations are available during playback.
Adjusting volume : 🔘 **or** 🔼🔽
Rewinding/Fast forwarding : 🔄 **or** 🔼🔽 (1 sec. or more)
Pausing/Playing/Playing from the beginning (when the movie stops) : ● **or** 🎵
Setting a bookmark : 📷 ▶ "Yes"
Stopping the movie : 📷

Information

• You can set whether to automatically play normal type i-motion while downloading or after it is downloaded. 【⑳動画自動再生設定 (Movie auto play)】
• Up to 100 titles of i-motion that is saved to FOMA terminal without replay restriction applied can be saved to playlist at once. 【⑳動画／ｉモーション (Movie/i-motion) ▷ プレイリスト作成／削除 (Create/delete playlist)】
• You can save programs recorded in a Blu-ray Disc recorder to a microSD card in FOMA terminal. 【⑳ブルーレイディスクレコーダー連携 (Linkage with a Blu-ray Disc recorder)】

Using Osaifu-Keitai

●●●
Osaifu-Keitai is equipped with IC card and allows you to pay money only by holding FOMA terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc. Moreover, by using communication, you can also credit electronic money in a bank account and check the balance or usage history, etc. Various security systems are also equipped for your safe usage. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- The data (including electronic money, points, etc.) in the IC card may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of FOMA terminal (When we take your Osaifu-Keitai for repair etc., as we cannot take it with data remained, you are required to erase the data by yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data except transfer by iC transfer service, confirm with Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.
- If the data in the IC card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If FOMA terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.

●●●

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

"iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)", "DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)", "モバイルSuica登録用ｉアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-αppli)" and "マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application)" are stored by default. For other Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, connect a site to download as follows.

1 MENU ▶ ✳ **Osaifu-Keitai** ▶ 8 **Search by i-mode**

Making initial setting of the service

1 MENU ▶ ✳ **Osaifu-Keitai** ▶ 1 **IC card content** ▶ **Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli** ▶ **Follow the instruction on the screen**

Using Osaifu-Keitai

Hold ⌒ mark over IC card reader. In this case, starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is not required.

IC card reader

⌒ mark

✎ Information

- You can disable IC card function. ⇒P41
- When replacing Osaifu-Keitai in such cases as model change or repair, data in an IC card can be transferred collectively to a new Osaifu-Keitai. 【 ⓠiC お引っこしサービス (iC transfer service)】
- Electronic cards【 ⓠトルカ (ToruCa)】such as coupon tickets can be obtained from an IC card reader or a site using Osaifu-Keitai. Obtained ToruCa can be exchanged between FOMA terminals using mails or infrared communication.

Using i-concier

i-concier is a service that Machi-chara (a character on the stand-by display) supports your life like a butler or concierge. It stores a variety of your information (area information of your residence, schedule, ToruCa, phonebook, bookmarks, etc.) and offers you information that suits your preferences of your living area and hobby in the right time. Also, it can automatically update schedules and ToruCa stored in FOMA terminal, etc., and automatically add useful information such as shop hours to the phonebook.

- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription (Subscription is required subscription of i-mode).
- If you do not subscribe Data Security Service, when you subscribe i-concier, you subscribe Data Security Service, too.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to receive information except for some information.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to use detail information.
- To use i-concier overseas, International Settings require to be set. For using i-concier overseas, a packet communication fee is charged for both receiving and viewing detail information.
- Information fee may be additionally required for some contents besides i-concier monthly service fee.
- Automatic updating i-schedule/ToruCa/phonebook, etc. requires a packet communication fee separately.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Receiving information and displaying details

Information is automatically sent. When information is received, the screen shown to the right appears.

<Information reception screen>
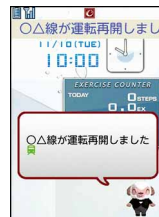
1 MENU ▶ # **i-concier** ▶ **Select a piece of information**
Some pieces of information may have schedule or ToruCa attached or contain a link to a site. To display details, select its icon.

Using overseas (Default : No)

1 MENU ▶ # **i-concier**

2 MENU ▶ "設定 (Settings)" ▶ "基本設定 (Basic settings)" ▶ "プロフィール設定／海外利用設定 (Profile/International service settings)" ▶ "海外利用設定 (International service settings)" ▶ **Change the setting**

Information

- You can set whether to display information on the stand-by display or sub-display when i-concier information is received. 【@インフォメーション表示設定 (Information display)】

Scheduler

You can manage schedules with FOMA terminal.

Saving schedule

1 ⊙ ▶ MENU ▶ 1 New entry
The screen shown to the right appears.

2 ⊠ to switch Main (New) screen, Schedule contact screen, Reminder screen, or Other settings screen, and then set required items

3 📷 [Save]

◀tings Main(New) Sched▶
☐ Schedule
All day   ON
Start date and time
2009/11/10(Tue) 00:00
End date and time
2009/11/10(Tue) 23:59
Place

Details

<Main (new) screen of schedule>
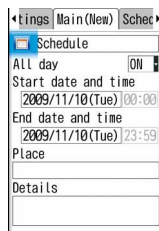
Point

Saving quickly from the stand-by screen (Quick schedule) : On the stand-by screen, enter the date to save a schedule (for 10:00 on November 25, enter "11251000") ▶ ⊙ ▶ Save the schedule

Checking a schedule

1 ⊙ ▶ Select the date on which a schedule is saved ▶ Select the schedule

✎ **Information**
- Two types of schedulers are available : "Normal" in which i-schedule downloaded from i-concier, birthdays saved in the phonebook, etc. can be displayed and "Classic" in which you can scroll and enlarge the calendar. 【●スケジュール帳 (Scheduler) ▷ スケジュール帳表示設定 (Scheduler view type)】

Alarm clock

Alarm clock sounds at a specified time. You can set 1Seg to start after the alarm sounds.

1 ⊙ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select any of 1 - 7
The screen shown to the right appears.

2 ⊠ to switch Set alarm screen, Set sound screen, 1Seg alarm screen or Set others screen, and then set required items

3 📷 [Set]

◀thers Set alarm Set s▶
Time   00:00
Repeat None
                 Day/Week
Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa
Message 目覚まし1
Snooze(Snz)   5min

<Alarm setting screen>

Point
- When "Repeat"on Set alarm screen is set to "Day of week", the alarm sounds at specified days of the week. In "Snooze (Snz)", set the intervals, at which the alarm sounds for 30 minutes.
- When "Activate 1Seg" on 1Seg alarm screen is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts when the alarm is turned off or stopped (1Seg alarm clock), and ends at the time specified in "Time out".
- While alarm clock is sounding, it stops or starts snooze with no operations for approximately 1 minute, by pressing a key other than ⌐, ₩TV and ⬇, or performing the touch operation or double-tap. Press ⌐ to terminate the alarm clock.

✎ **Information**
- You can set FOMA terminal so that even when it is turned off, it can be turned on when the alarm sounds. 【●アラーム自動電源ON設定 (Alarm auto power ON)】

More Convenient

73

Bar code reader

You can read and use information of JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code and CODE128 code.

1. MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 1 **Bar code reader**

2. **Move the camera over the code**
   When scanning is completed, a confirmation sound is made and the scanned data appears. On the screen after scanning, you can copy or save the data from the submenu. For some data, you can save certain types of data to phone book, or create mails, or connect to sites or websites.

<Scanning screen>

Point

- Press 🔳 to switch to Macro OFF before scanning large size codes. The readability of code may be raised by pressing Q to set zoom to OFF.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.
- If the code is not scanned well, try changing the distance between the code and camera, the angle or direction of camera, or using auto focus.

Shortcut icons

You can paste shortcut icons for frequently-used functions, folders, files, etc. on the stand-by display (Shortcut). Select the shortcut to start them immediately.

<Example> Pasting shortcuts of functions

1. ● ▶ **Move the cursor to a shortcut** ▶ MENU ▶ 📷 **[Add]** ▶ **Move the cursor to a function** ▶ 📷 **[Add icon]**

<Example> Pasting a shortcut of My Picture folder

1. MENU ▶ 5 **Data Box** ▶ 1 **My Picture** ▶ **Move the cursor to a folder** ▶ MENU
   When the cursor is placed on a file or folder and the submenu appears, "Add icon" appears in the guide area, indicating that the shortcut icon of the file or folder can be created.

   This is selectable when you can create the shortcut icon of an item you highlight

2. 📷 **[Add icon]**

Point

- From the submenu on the shortcut icon list screen, you can change the order of the shortcuts, the icons or titles.

Information

- You can create your own menus by freely selecting functions or phonebook. 【◎セレクトメニュー (Shortcut menu)】

Quick search

On the stand-by display or while performing a function, you can use search functions.

1 **On the stand-by display or while performing a function,** ロ ▶ ◯ **to switch search functions**

The instructions for each search function are as follows.

	i-mode	Enter a keyword in the entry field
	Full Browser	Select Search engine field▶Select search engine▶Enter a keyword in the entry field
	Map	**Searching by Vicinity viewer :** Select the category selection field▶1 - 5 (▶For 5, enter a keyword in the entry field) **Searching by Map :** "Map ← Vicinity viewer" ▶Enter a keyword in the entry field
	Guide	Enter a keyword in the entry field
	Dictionaries	Select the dictionary selection field▶1 - 3 ▶Enter a keyword in the entry field
	Phonebook entry	Enter a keyword in the entry field
	Mail	**Searching by subject/message text :** Select the mail search selection field▶1 or 2 ▶Enter a keyword in the entry field **Searching by phonebook :** Select the mail search selection field▶3 or 4 ▶Enter a keyword in the entry field

2 **"Search"**

The search results appear.

Using microSD card

F-01B supports microSD card of up to 2 Gbytes, and microSDHC card of up to 16 Gbytes (as of September, 2009). For information about latest operation check results, refer to FMWORLD (http://www.fmworld.net/ (In Japanese only)), etc.

Installing

1 **Turn FOMA terminal OFF and remove the battery pack**

2 **Insert the microSD card slowly into the slot with metal connectors side down (as shown right), and insert it further until it clicks**
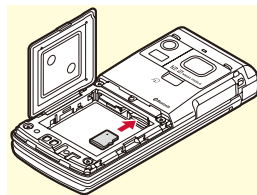
* To remove the microSD card, push it lightly to pop it out, and then pull it out.

Formatting

Format microSD card with FOMA terminal before using.

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit**▶ 3 **microSD**▶ ◯ **[Format]**▶ **Regular format**▶ **Authenticate**▶ **"Yes"**

Point

• You can minimize processing to format a formatted microSD card by selecting "Quick format". Formatting microSD card deletes all the data in the card.

Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card

Save important data in FOMA terminal to microSD card.

Moving/Copying to microSD card

<Example> Moving/Copying images

1 MENU ▶ 5 Data Box ▶ 1 My Picture ▶ Select a folder

2 **Move the cursor to data** ▶ MENU ▶ 5 **Move/Copy** ▶ 4 **Move to microSD** or 5 **Copy to microSD** ▶ 1 **One item - ** 3 **All items** ▶ **"Yes"**

Point
・You cannot move or copy the data that is inhibited to output from FOMA terminal.

Moving/Copying to FOMA terminal

<Example> Moving/Copying My Document

1 MENU ▶ 6 LifeKit ▶ 3 microSD ▶ 3 My Document ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to data** ▶ MENU ▶ 3 **Move/Copy** ▶ 1 **Move to phone** or 2 **Copy to phone** ▶ 1 **One item - ** 3 **All items** ▶ **"Yes"**

Displaying data in microSD card

1 MENU ▶ 6 LifeKit ▶ 3 microSD ▶ 1 Multimedia - 9 **Other** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select data**

Backing up at once

You can back up Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad, Bookmark and setting item data all at once in microSD card. Data is overwritten for the second-time backup or later.

1 MENU ▶ 6 LifeKit ▶ 3 microSD ▶ 8 Backup/Restore ▶ 1 **Backup to microSD**

2 **"Yes"** ▶ **Authenticate**
When phonebook is not saved, omit Step 3.

3 **"Yes" or "No"**

Point
・Some restrictions apply, such as moving pictures saved in phonebook or the part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes are not backed up.
・Select "2 Restore to phone" at the end of Step 1 to delete the latest data in FOMA terminal and overwrite save it.

Information

・From a PC, you can operate data in a microSD card in FOMA terminal.【@USBモード設定 (USB mode settings)】
・You can check the memory status of microSD card or synchronize the data which was changed, added or deleted in another device correctly.
【@microSDカード (microSD card) ▷ 使用状況／情報更新 (Memory Status/Sync data info)】
・You can store the data saved in FOMA terminal to DOCOMO Data Security.【@ケータイデータお預かりサービス (Data Security)】

Bluetooth

You can establish a wireless connection between FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device. For operations of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

* Wireless communication is not guaranteed for all Bluetooth devices.

✤ Compatible version
Bluetooth standard Version 2.0+EDR

✤ Functions available with Bluetooth
- You can also make a handsfree call by using a car navigation system etc. after connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth car navigation device etc. (commercially available). You can make a call wirelessly by connecting FOMA terminal and Bluetooth Headset F01 (optional).
- You can play sounds or music wirelessly or perform remote control by connecting FOMA terminal with Wireless Earphone Set 02 (optional) or a Bluetooth audio device (commercially available).
- You can connect FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth compatible PC to perform packet communication or 64K data transmission using FOMA terminal as a modem.
- You can send or receive phonebook entries (User information) by connecting FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device.
- You can perform a versus game of i-αppli or exchange data with connecting other terminal or Bluetooth device.

Registering Bluetooth devices

Set a Bluetooth device to registration stand-by mode in advance.

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ ✳ **Bluetooth** ▶ 3 **Register new devices** ▶ "OK"
When Bluetooth device is searched, the screen shown to the right appears.

<Registered device list screen>

2 **Select a Bluetooth device to register** ▶ **Enter the Bluetooth passkey**
The profile selection screen appears. To connect the Bluetooth device, go to Step 2 in "Connecting with registered Bluetooth devices".

Point --
- For details of Bluetooth passkey, refer to the operation manual for the Bluetooth device. To connect FOMA terminals with each other, enter the same Bluetooth passkey on those terminals (determine any 4-16 digit numbers as Bluetooth passkey). Bluetooth passkey is not required to register Wireless Earphone Set 02.

Connecting with registered Bluetooth devices

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ ✳ **Bluetooth** ▶ 2 **Device list** ▶ **Select Bluetooth device to connect**
The screen shown to the right appears.

<Service selection screen>

2 **Select a profile to connect** ▶ 📷 **[connect]**

Infrared communication/iC transmission

You can send/receive data to/from devices such as FOMA terminal in which infrared communication function or iC transmission function is integrated. Check the locations of the other party's infrared port and $\bigcirc$ icon, and refer to the following images to establish connection.

Infrared data port
15°
15°
Approx. 20 cm or less
Infrared communication

Face $\bigcirc$ marks to each other
*Approx.1 cm distant or less
iC transmission
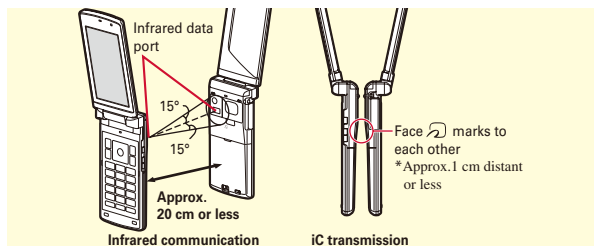
Point
- When sending/receiving all data items, the sender and receiver need to determine a 4-digit authentication password in advance. For infrared communications, the receiver's terminal must be ready for communications before the sender's terminal.
- When sending/receiving all data items, the data saved in the receiver is deleted, and the received data is saved. However, some data (data in "Preinstalled" folder, etc) may not be deleted, or the saving locations, folder names or the orders of data may be different from those in the sender.

Sending a phonebook entry via infrared communication/iC transmission

1 **Move the cursor to the phonebook entry to send** ▶ MENU ▶ 8 **Send via Ir/iC/BT** ▶ 1 **Send Ir data or** 3 **iC transmission** ▶ "Yes"

Sending all data items via infrared communication/iC transmission

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 2 **Ir/iC/PC connection** ▶ 2 **Send all Ir data or** 3 **Send all via iC** ▶ **Select an item to send** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Enter an authentication password** ▶ "Yes"

Receiving a data item via infrared communication

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 2 **Ir/iC/PC connection** ▶ 1 **Receive Ir data** ▶ 1 **Receive** ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Send a data item from the sender** ▶ **Upon completion of reception,** "Yes"

Receiving a data item via iC transmission

1 **Send a data item from the sender** ▶ **Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place** $\bigcirc$ **marks close to each other** ▶ **Upon completion of reception,** "Yes"

Receiving all data items via infrared communication

1 MENU ▶ 6 **LifeKit** ▶ 2 **Ir/iC/PC connection** ▶ 1 **Receive Ir data** ▶ 2 **Receive all** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Enter an authentication password** ▶ "Yes" ▶ **Send a data item from the sender** ▶ **Upon completion of reception,** "Yes"

Receiving all data items via iC transmission

1 **Send data items from the sender** ▶ **Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place** $\bigcirc$ **marks close to each other** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Enter an authentication password** ▶ **Place the** $\bigcirc$ **marks close to each other** ▶ **Upon completion of reception,** "Yes"

Troubleshooting

Check for the necessity of software update first, and update the software if necessary. ⇒P82
When checking the following items not to improve the state, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual or make a call to DOCOMO-specified repair office.

✜ Power supply and charging

● **FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON.**
  - Is the battery pack installed correctly?
  - Is the battery exhausted?

● **FOMA terminal cannot be charged (the charging light does not turn on).**
  - Is the battery pack installed correctly?
  - Are the adapter and FOMA terminal set correctly? Is the AC adapter connector securely inserted to FOMA terminal or the desktop holder that came with the terminal when you use AC adapter (optional)? Is AC adapters power plug or cigarette lighter plug inserted to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket correctly?
  - Is the charging jack of FOMA terminal dirty when you use desktop holder? If it is dirty, clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
  - If you execute calls, communications or other function operations while charging the battery pack, FOMA terminal may become hot. For safety, charging may not start when FOMA terminal is hot. Wait until the temperature drops after using and charge again.

✜ Terminal operation

● **FOMA terminal etc. become hot while operating/ charging.**
  While operating or charging, or if you use i-αppli, videophone call, 1Seg watching, etc. for a long time while charging the battery, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter may become hot. There is no problem about safety and continue to use it.

● **The operation time provided by the battery pack is short.**
  - Is your terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area? Out of service area, many powers are consumed to search available radio waves.
  - The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
  - The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces. Even the full charge state, when the operation time is too short, purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.

● **Turning the power off or restarting automatically happens.**
  If the jack of battery pack is dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut OFF. If it is dirty, clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

● **No operations are performed even by keypad and touch operations.**
  Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Side key hold, Lock on close, Security lock, or touch lock?

● **The recognition of UIM is not performed successfully.**
  - Is UIM installed in the right direction?
  - Is UIM (blue) inserted?

✜ Calls

● **Calls cannot be made using the keypads.**
  Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Self mode, Keypad dial lock, Lock on close and Security lock?

● **Calls are not connected (Even when moving, "圏外 (out of service area)" does not disappear or although radio waves are enough, making/ receiving calls is unavailable).**
  - Turn the power off and on, or remove and attach battery pack or UIM.
  - Even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves, due to the type of radio waves, making/receiving calls may be unavailable. Move to call again.
  - Is Specified caller, Anonymous caller, Unregistered caller or 3G/GSM setting set?
  - Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/mails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. In this case, "Please wait for a while" appears and the caller hears a busy tone. Move to other place or call again at other time.

✜ Osaifu-Keitai

● **Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.**
  - When removing the battery pack, IC card functions are unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings.
  - Do you place 分 mark of FOMA terminal over IC card reader?
  - Have you activated Omakase Lock or IC card lock?

Others

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- FOMA terminal is provided with a written warranty. Make sure that you receive it. Check the written contents and items such as "shop name/date of purchase" and keep it in a safe place. If it does not contain the necessary information, immediately contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.

After-Sales Service

✤ When problems occur

Before requesting repair, read the section on "Troubleshooting" in "使いかたガイド (Guide)" in this manual or FOMA terminal (In Japanese only). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

✤ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office. Be sure to check the opening hours of the office before you go. Note that, repair may take longer time depending on the state of damage.

In the warranty period
- FOMA terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber is charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse (damage of the color LCD or connector, etc), accident, neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.

Repairs may not be possible in the following cases.
- When judged as malfunction due to moisture at the repair office (e.g. when detected in a moisture seal reaction)
- When corrosion due to moisture, condensation, perspiration, etc. is detected, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed (repairs may not be possible if external connection jack, earphone/microphone jack or liquid crystal panel is damaged, or the terminal outer case is lifted)
- * Even in case that a repair is possible, since those conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair is charged.

After expiration of the warranty
All repairs that are requested are charged.

Replacement parts
Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts etc.

✚ Notes

- Do not modify FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - Repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification. The following cases may be regarded as modifications.
    - A sticker etc. is put on the LCD or keypad part
    - FOMA terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
    - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO's genuine parts
  - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to FOMA terminal. If confirmation of the inscription sticker' content is impossible, determination of whether specific technical standards are satisfied cannot be made. Therefore, repair may be refused
- Function settings and information such as total calls may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece, speaker, etc. of FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- This FOMA terminal is waterproof. However, if inside of the terminal gets wet or moist, turn the power off, remove the battery pack immediately, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

Support

i-mode fault diagnosis site

Using your FOMA terminal, you can check whether sending/receiving of messages and downloading of images and melodies are normally performed. When FOMA terminal is assumed to have malfunctions as the result of the diagnosis, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

Accessing to "ｉモード故障診断サイト (i-mode fault diagnostic site)"

i-mode site : ｉMenu⇒お知らせ (Notice)⇒サービス・機能 (Services/Function)⇒ｉモード (i-mode)⇒ｉモード故障診断 (i-mode fault diagnostic site) (In Japanese only)

QR code for site access

- The access method may be changed without previous notice.
- Packet communication for i-mode fault diagnosis site is free. However, accessing from overseas is charged.

Software update

This function allows you to update software in FOMA terminal using packet communication when update is required.

Update information is posted in "お客様サポート (user support)" on NTT DOCOMO website or iMenu. Software may be updated in 3 methods: "Automatic update", "Immediate update" and "Reserved update".

* Packet communication for software update is free.
* Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DOCOMO recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.

❖ **When updating software**
- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. The update may fail.
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged.
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- Making/Receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update (Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.).

- It is recommended that software update be executed in good radio wave conditions with three bars of the antenna icon displayed and the terminal not moved. If radio wave conditions become weaker during software download or the download is stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave conditions.
- When updating software, your private information concerning FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software update managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update has failed, "Rewrite failed" appears and all operation becomes unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- Software cannot be updated overseas.

Set auto-update (Default : Auto-update)

Select automatic update of software or alert notification of the necessity of update.

1 MENU ▶ 8 **Setting&NWservices** ▶ 7 **Clock & Other** ▶ 3 **Software update** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Set auto-update" ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 回 **[Set]**

When "Set auto-update" is set and update is required, the update file is automatically downloaded, and 🔣 (rewrite notice icon) appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon to confirm or change the start time of update.

When "Only notification" is set and update is required, 🔢 (update notification icon) appears.

Immediate update

Select 📱 (update notification icon) on the stand-by display or an item on the menu.
Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

<Example> Selecting the notification icon to update

1 On the stand-by display, ● ▶ Select 📱 (update notification icon) ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

2 "Now update" ▶ After about 5 seconds, download starts automatically

Canceling download : On the downloading screen, ●
When the server is busy, a selection screen prompts you to reserve the update time or cancel update.

3 Download is complete and after about 5 seconds, software update is automatically started ▶ Update is completed, restart is automatically made ▶ "OK"

```
Software Update
Update is needed.

  Now update
  Reserve
  Cancel
```
<Software update screen>

Reserved update

When download takes time, or the server is busy, reserve the update time.

<Example> Selecting from displayed options

1 On Software Update screen, "Reserve"
Available dates for reservation are shown by the time of the server.

2 Select preferred day and time ▶ "Yes" ▶ "OK"
Selecting "Others" allows you to select other date and time options than displayed ones. When setting is completed, 📱 (reservation icon) appears on the stand-by display.

```
Software Update
Select your preferred
day and time.
11/10(Tue)  10:00
11/10(Tue)  12:09
11/10(Tue)  13:51
11/10(Tue)  14:23
11/10(Tue)  15:35
11/10(Tue)  16:19
11/10(Tue)  17:19
11/10(Tue)  18:29
11/10(Tue)  19:39
11/10(Tue)  20:59
11/10(Tue)  21:21
Others
```
<Preferred date and time selection screen>

Checking software update reservation

You can check or change the reserved date and time.

1 MENU ▶ 8 Settings&NWservices ▶ 7 Clock & Other ▶ 3 Software update ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Update"
A reservation confirmation screen appears.

2 Check the reservation ▶ "OK"

Point

Changing the reservation : On a reservation confirmation screen, "Change" ▶ Select a date ▶ Select a time period ▶ Select a date and time ▶ "Yes" ▶ "OK"

Canceling the reservation : On a reservation confirmation screen, "Cancel" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "OK"

Others

Scanning function

For the data or programs that are imported to FOMA terminal, this function detects data and deletes data or inhibits activation of applications that may cause troubles.

✜ Before using Scanning function

- The Scanning function provides a certain countermeasure against invasion of data which causes some trouble in the mobile phone, when viewing website, receiving messages, etc. Note that, if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent those troubles from occurring.
- Different pattern definition is used for different FOMA terminal models. Also, note that DOCOMO may stop distribution of pattern definition for models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.

●●●
Update pattern definition first, then keep the pattern definition up-to-date.
●●●

Set auto-update

You can set FOMA terminal so that pattern definitions can be automatically updated.

1 **MENU** ▶ **8** **Settings&NWservices** ▶ **4** **Security & Locks** ▶ **8** **Scanning function** ▶ **2** **Set auto-update** ▶ **"Enable"** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **"Yes"** ▶ **"OK"**

When the Auto-updating pattern definitions is completed, 🌼 appears on the stand-by display.

Warning level	Scan result screen	Actions
0	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly.　　OK　Detail	**"OK" :** Continue processing of the started application
1	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation?　Yes　No　Detail	**"Yes" :** Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles **"No" :** Continue processing of the started application
2	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation.　OK　Detail	**"OK" :** Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles
3	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Delete data?　Yes　No　Detail	**"Yes" :** Delete data that may cause troubles **"No" :** Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles
4	Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Deleting data.　OK　Detail	**"OK" :** Delete data that may cause troubles

* Selecting "Detail" on each screen displays a list of names of the detected problem elements. When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem names are omitted.

Others

84

Introduction of options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area.
For details, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02[*1]
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01[*2]
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Battery Pack F10
- In-Car Holder 01
- Desktop Holder F30
- Back Cover F42
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable[*3]
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02[*3]
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Bluetooth Headset F01
- AC adapter for Bluetooth Headset F01
- Wireless Earphone Set P01
- Wireless Earphone Set 02
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01[*4]/P02[*4]
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01[*4]
- Earphone Plug Adapter 01
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001[*4]
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001[*5]/P002[*5]

- Stereo Earphone Set P001[*5]
- Earphone/Microphone 01
- Stereo Earphone Set 01
- Remote controller with microphone F01[*4]
- Earphone Terminal P001[*5]
- Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use[*1]
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna[*6]
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)[*6]
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01[*4]/02

[*1] When using FOMA terminal overseas, use the adapter plug that is suitable for use in your travel destination. Also, do not charge the battery with a transformer for overseas travel.
[*2] FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to charge F-01B.
[*3] If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.
[*4] Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 is required to connect to F-01B.
[*5] Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 and Earphone Plug Adapter P001 are required to connect to F-01B.
[*6] Use this only in Japan.

Others

Menu list

- Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.
- Settings of menus indicated in red can be restored to the default in Reset.
- Set Kisekae Tool by default varies by terminal color.

■Mail

1 1	Inbox
1 2	Compose message
1 3	Compose Decome-Anime
1 4	Unsent messages
1 5	Outbox
1 6	Check new message
1 7	SMS/Area Mail
1 7 1	SMS
1 7 1 1	Compose SMS
1 7 1 2	UIM Inbox
1 7 1 3	UIM Outbox
1 7 1 4	SMS settings
1 7 1 5	Check new SMS
1 7 2	Early warning "Area Mail" setting
1 7 2 1	Receive setting
1 7 2 2	Beep time
1 7 2 3	Manner/Public mode setting
1 7 2 4	Check ring tone
1 7 2 5	Other
1 7 2 5 1	Receive entry
1 8	Receive option
1 9	Mail settings
1 9 1	Alert settings
1 9 1 1	Mail alert
1 9 1 2	MessageR alert
1 9 1 3	MessageF alert
1 9 2	Sort method
1 9 3	Signature
1 9 4	Reply setting
1 9 4 1	Reply format
1 9 4 2	Activate quick reply
1 9 4 3	Quick reply presets
1 9 5	Mail group
1 9 6	Display settings
1 9 6 1	Display priority
1 9 6 2	Receive option setting
1 9 6 3	Incoming msg. attach
1 9 6 4	Attachment auto play
1 9 6 5	Message list
1 9 6 6	Auto-display
1 9 6 7	Address/Spam Mail Settings
1 9 7	Auto save setting when editing
1 9 8	Check msg. option
1 ＊	Template
1 ＊ 1	Decome
1 ＊ 2	Decome-Anime

■i-mode

2 1	iMenu Search
2 2	Bookmark
2 3	Screen memo
2 4	Last URL
2 5	Enter URL
2 6	i-Channel
2 7	i-mode settings
2 8	Access shortcuts
2 9	RSS reader
2 ＊	Full Browser Home
2 0	Search engine

■i-αppli

3 1	Software list
3 2	i-αppli call log
3 3	i-αppli settings
3 3 1	Sort software
3 3 2	Auto-start
3 3 3	Software info disp.
3 3 4	Display light time
3 3 5	Vibrate effect
3 3 6	Sound effect volume
3 3 7	i-Widget settings
3 3 7 1	i-Widget sound effect
3 3 7 2	i-Widget roaming set
3 3 8	i-αppli call DL set
3 3 9	AUTO-GPS preferred setting
3 4	Display history
3 5	i-αppli shortcuts
3 6	About i-αppli

■Phonebook & Logs

4 1	Phonebook
4 2	Phonebook new entry
4 3	Add group
4 4	Phonebook(UIM) new entry
4 5	Received calls
4 6	Redial
4 7	Record msg.&Voice memo
4 7 1	Record message
4 7 2	Recorded messages
4 7 3	Record voice memo
4 7 4	Voice memos
4 8	Mail logs
4 8 1	Sent msg. log
4 8 2	Received msg. log
4 9	User information

■Data Box

5 1	My Picture
5 2	MUSIC
5 3	Music&Video Channel
5 4	i-motion/Movie
5 5	Melody
5 6	My Document
5 7	Kisekae Tool
5 8	Machi-chara
5 9	Chara-den
5 ＊	1Seg
5 0	Other

■Life Kit

| 6 1 | Bar code reader |

Others

87

Others

89

■MUSIC

■Osaifu-Keitai

■User information

■i-concier

*1 When USB Cable is connected, default settings are not restored by Reset.

*2 For Network services, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

*3 Reset causes the settings of Auto time adjust (including Time zone and Summer time) and Offset to be restored to the default.

*4 By performing Reset, Set auto-update is restored to the default settings.

Others

Main specifications

■Phone

Product name		F-01B
Size		Approx. 114 (H)✕51 (W)✕17.3 (T) (Thickest part : Approx. 21) (Unit: mm)
Weight		Approx. 141 g (with battery)
Continuous stand-by time*1, 2, 3	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 620 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 350 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 400 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 300 H
Continuous call time*2, 3, 4	FOMA/3G	Voice call : Approx. 240 min. Videophone call : Approx. 110 min. (The substitute image: Approx. 140 min.)
	GSM	Approx. 270 min.
1Seg watching time*2, 5		Approx. 300 min. (1Seg Eco-mode : Approx. 330 min.)
Charging time*6		AC adapter : Approx. 150 min. DC adapter : Approx. 150 min.
LCD	Type	Display : TFT 16,777,216 colors Sub-display : Mono-color organic electro-luminescence (white)
	Size	Display : Approx. 3.4 inches Sub-display : Approx. 1.4 inches
	Number of pixels	Display : 460,800 pixels (480✕960 dots) Sub-display : 11,136 pixels (174✕64 dots)
Image pickup device	Type	CMOS
	Size	1/2.5 inches
	Number of effective pixels	Approx. 12,200,000 pixels
Camera section	Number of recording pixels (Max.)	Approx. 12,000,000 pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Up to approx. 16.0x
Recording section	Savable still images*7	Up to approx. 600 images (default) Up to approx. 2,000 images (after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted)
	Continuous shooting of still images	2-9 images
	File format for still image	JPEG
	Moving picture shooting time*8	Up to approx. 52 min. (save to phone/default) Up to approx. 106 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 57 min. (save to 64MB microSD card)
	Moving picture file format	MP4
	1Seg recording time	Up to approx. 30 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 640 min. (save to 2GB microSD card)
Playing music	Continuous play time	i-motion : Approx. 1,256 min.*9 Chaku-uta full® : Approx. 5,099 min.*9, 10 WMA file : Approx. 4,767 min.*10 Music&Video Channel (sound) : Approx. 5,099 min.*10 Music&Video Channel (moving picture) : Approx. 321 min.
Recording size	Chaku-uta®*11/ Chaku-uta full®	Approx. 112 MB

Others

*1 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time when FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally. Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally remains stationary. Moving continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally with a combination of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" status.

*2 Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.

*3 The call, communication or stand-by times are reduced by making i-mode communications, creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-αppli, making i-αppli stand-by display settings, downloading or playing Music&Video Channel program, playing tune with MUSIC Player, activating or recording 1Seg, using AUTO-GPS, or Bluetooth connection etc.

*4 Continuous call time indicates the approximate time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.

*5 1Seg watching time indicates the approximate watching time with receiving radio waves normally and using Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional).

*6 Charging time indicates the estimated time for charging an empty battery with FOMA terminal turned OFF. Charging with FOMA terminal turned ON requires longer time.

*7 The number of savable still images is based on a image size "QCIF (176✕144)", Quality "Standard" and file size 10 Kbytes.

*8 The moving picture shooting time means allowable time for one movie. The number is based on Image size "QCIF (176✕144)" and Quality "STD (Standard)". Varies depending on the moving picture to be recorded.

*9 AAC format files.

*10 Background playing is available.

*11 "Chaku-uta" is registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

■Battery Pack

Quality	Battery Pack F10
Battery used	Li-ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.7V
Nominal capacity	870mAh

Savable/Recordable/Protectable number

Type		Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Phonebook[*1]		Up to 1,000	—
UIM phonebook		Up to 50	—
Kisekae Tool[*1]		Up to 50	—
Mail[*1, 2]	Received messages	Up to 2,500	Up to 1,250
	Sent messages	Up to 500	Up to 250
	Unsent messages	Up to 200	Up to 100
Bookmark[*3]		Up to 200	—
Screen memo[*1, 3]		Up to 100	Up to 100
Music[*1]	Chaku-uta full®	Up to 100	—
	Uta-moji Lyrics	Up to 100	—
i-αppli[*1, 4]		Up to 100	—
Images[*1]		Up to 2,000	—
Moving picture/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound recorder[*1]		Up to 200	—
Melodies[*1]		Up to 500	—
1Seg [*1]	Video	Up to 10	—
	Images	Up to 100	—
Scheduler[*5]		Up to 2,600	—
Notepad		Up to 50	—

*1 Depending on the size of data or usage status of common memory space, the actual number of items that can be saved and recorded may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode mail and SMS.

*3 The total number of i-mode and Full Browser.

*4 Total number of i-αppli and Message i-αppli. Up to 5 items of Message i-αppli can be saved.

*5 Total number of schedules, schedules in i-schedule and watching/recording reservation. Up to 100 items of watching/recording reservation in total can be saved.

Others

Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone

This model phone FOMA F-01B meets the MIC's[1] technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)[2] averaged over 10 grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP.[3]

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this FOMA F-01B is 0.641 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). The test for SAR was conducted according to the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the websites below.

World Health Organization (WHO) :
http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP :
http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC :
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/index.htm
TELEC :
http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DOCOMO :
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/
FUJITSU LIMITED :
http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/sar/

[1] Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications.
[2] The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
[3] International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection.

Declaration of Conformity

The product "F-01B" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/doc/.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.

Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR[*] limits[**] for exposure to radio-frequency(RF) energy, which SAR[*] value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.551W/Kg. While there may be differences between the SAR[*] levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet[***] the EU requirements for RF exposure.

[*] The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.
[**] The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/Kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.
[***] Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operation positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Others

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules.
  Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
  ① this device may not cause harmful interference, and
  ② this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications made in or to the radio phone, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, will void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

This model phone meets the U.S. Government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

This model phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. This model phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the FCC of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions as accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output level of the phone.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to prove to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC, when tested for use at the ear, is 0.462W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.521W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements).

While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirements.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Equipment Authorization Search section at http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/ (please search on FCC ID VQK-F01B).

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and which positions the handset at a minimum distance of 1.5 cm from the body.

* In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the general public is 1.6 Watts/kg (W/kg), averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

Others

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Important Safety Information

AIRCRAFT
Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers flight mode or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

DRIVING
Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

HOSPITALS
Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

PETROL STATIONS
Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

INTERFERENCE
Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

Pacemakers
Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15 cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pace maker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and does not carry it in a breast pocket.

Hearing Aids
Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

For other Medical Devices :
Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). And, they are also under coverage of Export Administration Regulations of the U.S. When exporting and reexporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan or US Department of Commerce.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of FOMA terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.
Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.
Avoid taking pictures of others with FOMA terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- "FOMA", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "mopera", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-Channel", "i-area", "iD", "Dual Network", "Security Scan", "Public mode", "ToruCa", "2in1", "DCMX", "OFFICEED", "docomo PRIME series" and logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "Music&Video Channel" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Vista®, Windows Media® and PowerPoint® are trademarks or registered trademarks of "Microsoft Corporation" in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. In this manual, they may be described as Excel and Word.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- "Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.

- This product contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS, the ACCESS logo and NetFront are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and/or other countries.
  Copyright© 2009 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite® and Adobe Reader® LE technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 2003-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe Reader Mobile Copyright© 1993-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- microSDHC Logo is a trademark.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- "CROSS YOU" is a trademark of Sony Corporation.
- ⚡ is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Word, Excel and PowerPoint file display technologies are powered by Picsel Technologies.
  Picsel, Picsel File Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.
- ATOK + APOT of Justsystem Corporation is installed in this product as Japanese character conversion function.
  "ATOK" "APOT (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology)" are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- T9® is a trademark or registered trademark of Nuance Communications, Inc. in US and of Nuance corporations in other countries.
- This equipment is provided with the software licensed by Symbian Software Ltd. or the licensor©1998-2009. symbian OS and Symbian OS are trademarks of Symbian Ltd. or the licensor.
- "Privacy mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU LIMITED.
- Bluetooth® and its logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and NTT DOCOMO uses them under license. Other trademarks and names inhere to their respective owners.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "Uni-Type" is a registered trademark of LIM Corp., Ltd.
- FrameSolid is the registered trademark of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- The auto object tracking technology utilized is TrackSolid™, a product of Morpho, Inc. TrackSolid™ is trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- Google is registered trademark of Google Inc.
- ズーキーパー (Zookeeper) is a trademark or registered trademark of KITERETSU Inc.
- "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" is trademark of ATR-Trek.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Others

- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
  - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 indicates the Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

Others

- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- The image interpolation technology utilized is FrameSolid, a product of Morpho, Inc.
- This product is equipped with the technologies of GestureTek, Inc. Copyright© 2006-2009, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- "学研モバイル国語辞典 (Gakken Mobile JpnDic)", "学研モバイル和英辞典 (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)", "学研モバイル英和辞典 (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)", "今日は何の日 (Today's trivia)" and "今日の歴史 (Today in history)" are copyrighted by GAKKEN CO., LTD.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below.
  - Recording moving pictures and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.

- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When downloading licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a "Revocation List" with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you cannot access a content that requires the upgrade.

Index

Others

Others

Please ask checking/changing subscription detail, application of various services and request of various information materials online.

From i-mode   **iMenu ⇒ お客様サポート (Support) ⇒ お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)**   `No packet communication charges`

From PCs   **My docomo (http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)**

* You need your "Netowork security code" to use the site from i-mode.
* No packet communication charge applies to access the site from i-mode. Pacekt communication charge applies to access from overseas.
* You need "docomo ID/Password" to access the site from yor PC.

* If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "docomo ID/Password", contact to the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
* You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
* There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

Using mobile phone with your manners!

When using your mobile phone in apublic place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in cases below

■ In a place where use of mobile phones is prohibited

・Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in an aircraft or hospital.

Always set Public mode in cases below

■ When driving

・Using a mobile phone by holding it with the hand while driving is subject to penalty.

■ In public places such as a theater, movie theater or art museum

Consider privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

DOCOMO's environmental effort

Fewer pages in the instruction manual

This manual covers instructions only for basic functions to reduce pages and paper usage.
For frequently-used functions and their details, see 使いかたガイド (Guide) (installed in this FOMA terminal, in Japanese only) or visit NTT DOCOMO website.

Recycle of mobile phones

To protect environment and recycle the precious resources, mobile phone and PHS enterprises collect phones, batteries and chargers, regardless of brands and manufacturers, at shops labeled with the mark shown to the left. Bring these devices to your nearest docomo Shop.

General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

**■ From DOCOMO mobile phones
(In Japanese only)**
📱 (No prefix) 151 (toll free)
* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

**■ From land-line phones
(In Japanese only)**
☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
● For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website or the i-mode site.
▶ NTT DOCOMO website http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/   ▶ i-mode site iMenu⇒お客様サポート (user support)⇒ドコモショップ (docomo Shop) * In Japanese only

Repairs

**■ From DOCOMO mobile phones
(In Japanese only)**
📱 (No prefix) 113 (toll free)
* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

**■ From land-line phones
(In Japanese only)**
☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <docomo Information Center>

(available 24 hours a day)
■ From DOCOMO mobile phones

| International call access code for the country you stay | **-81-3-5366-3114* (toll free)** |

* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
※If you use F-01B, you should dial the number ＋81-3-5366-3114 (to enter '＋', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ From land-line phones <Universal number>

| International prefix number for the universal number | **-800-0120-0151*** |

* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
※For international call access codes for major countries/international prefix numbers for the universal number, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

Failures encountered overseas <Network Support and Operation Center>

(available 24 hours a day)
■ From DOCOMO mobile phones

| International call access code for the country you stay | **-81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)** |

* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
※If you use F-01B, you should dial the number ＋81-3-6718-1414 (to enter '＋', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ From land-line phones <Universal number>

| International prefix number for the universal number | **-800-5931-8600*** |

* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
※For international call access codes for major countries/international prefix numbers for the universal number, refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

● **If you lose your FOMA terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA terminal.**
● **If the FOMA terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.**

Don't forget your mobile phone ⋯ or your manners!
When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.
Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED

Li-ion 00

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, a docomo agent or a recycle center.

F-01B
Manual for PC Connection

■ **About Manual for PC Connection**
This manual describes about data communications using F-01B and how to install "FOMA communication configuration file" and "DOCOMO Connection Manager" contained in CD-ROM.
Depending on the environment of your PC, some of operation procedures and/or screens may be different.

Data Communication

There are 3 communication modes available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC : data transfer (OBEX™ communication), packet communication and 64K data communication.

● To make packet communications or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.

● When performing packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication can not be used overseas.

● FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication or Remote Wakeup.

● Data communication can be performed connecting with DOCOMO's PDA like sigmarion III. However, FOMA terminal does not support high-speed communication compatible with HIGH-SPEED area.

Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

You can send and receive data such as image, music, phonebook or mail etc. to/from other FOMA terminals or PCs etc.

| Infrared communication |
| iC transmission |
| Bluetooth communication |

F-01B

F-01B

**FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02
microSD card
DOCOMO keitai datalink**
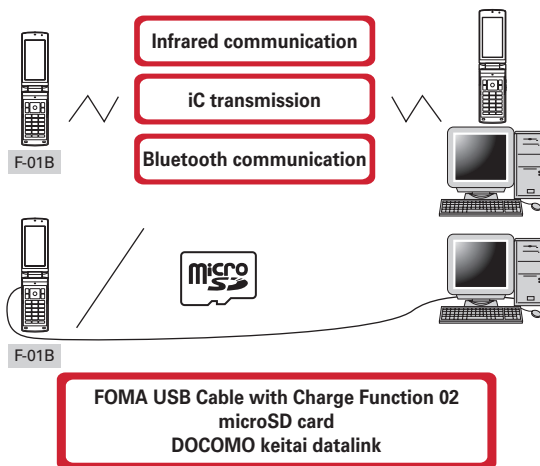
Packet communication

You can connect to the Internet and perform data communication (packet communication).
Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication can be performed at a maximum reception speed of 7.2Mbps and a maximum transmission speed of 384kbps by using access points that support FOMA packet communication such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service. Best effort method which the actual communication speed varies with the environment and the rate of congestion offers.

Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images and downloading will require high charges.

* The communication speed may be slower when connecting out of FOMA HIGH-SPEED area, connecting to access points incompatible with HIGH-SPEED, or using devices incompatible with HIGH-SPEED such as DOCOMO's PDA; sigmarion III.

* For Bluetooth connection, though the communication speed of FOMA terminal is equal to HIGH-SPEED, communication may not be performed by maximum speed because the communication speed between Bluetooth devices has limits.

* Maximum speed of reception 7.2Mbps and transmission 384kbps are the values in technical standards, thus they are not indicated actual communication speed. Actual communication speed varies by the network congestion or environment of communication.

1

64K data communication

You can connect to the Internet and perform 64K data communication.
Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.
Access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points can be used.
Please be careful that a high cost will be charged for long-time communications.

Before use

Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below. They may vary depending on the PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
Computer	PC/AT compatible computer For USB cable connection : USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) For Bluetooth connection : Compatible with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, Ver. 1.2 or Ver. 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles) Recommended 800 x 600 dots in display resolution and High Color 16 bits or more
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more　　　　Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5MB or more free disk space * 35MB or more free disk space for DOCOMO Connection Manager

● For the latest information about operating environment, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
● DOCOMO will not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
● Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under conditions other than that described above.
● Recommended environment for operating the menu is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later (For Windows XP, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later). If no menu appears when CD-ROM is set, take actions given below.
　① Under Windows Vista : Click 🄯 (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".
　　Under Windows XP, Windows 2000 : Click "スタート (Start)"→"ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".
　② Enter as follows in "名前 (Name)" and click "OK".
　　<CD-ROM drive name> : ¥index.html
　　　* CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.
● When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen may be displayed. This warning depends on the security settings of Internet Explorer but it is not a problem for use. Click "はい (Yes)".
　* Depending on the environment of your PC, the screen may be different.

Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for F-01B"
* USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.
* When using USB HUB, it may not operate properly.
* When performing Bluetooth connection, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 or FOMA USB Cable is not required.

2

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details, contact your Provider.
● DOCOMO's Internet connection service, mopera U is available. mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription.

Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.
● Connections to DoPa access points are unavailable.
● For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
　http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html

User authentication

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password and connect. Your ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator of the connection destination such as your provider or corporate LAN. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication during using PC browser

If FirstPass (user certificate) is required for the access authentication during using PC browser, use FirstPass PC software. It is provided on NTT DOCOMO website. For details and download, refer to the following website. You can also access to the following website from the attached CD-ROM.
Details of the service : http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/service/safety/firstpass/
Download : http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/support/utilization/application/foma/utility/firstpass/index.html

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication in Japan, the following conditions must be satisfied.
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K.
- Bluetooth connection requires a PC compatible with Bluetooth Standard Ver. 1.1, Ver. 1.2 or Ver. 2.0 + EDR (dialup networking profiles).
* Note that even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the radio wave conditions are poor.

Using CD-ROM

The attached CD-ROM includes software to use the data communication with FOMA terminal, "Kuten Code List" in the PDF version, etc.

Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is software to back up and edit your phone information such as phonebook and mail. It is provided on NTT DOCOMO website. For details and download of this software, refer to the following website. You can also access to the following website from the attached CD-ROM.
http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/
● To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, installing FOMA communication configuration file in advance is required.
● For details of downloading procedure, data that can be transferred, operating environments, installing procedure, operation procedure, etc., refer to the website above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software.
● To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, USB cable is required.

Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.

> **Downloading and installing FOMA communication configuration file**
> • **Installing from attached CD-ROM**
> • **Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing**

▼

> **Data transfer**

Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting to a PC with USB cable or Bluetooth.

For USB cable connection

① **Downloading or installing FOMA communication configuration file→P7**
  • **Installing from attached CD-ROM**
  • **Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing**

② **Connecting FOMA terminal to a PC→P6**

③ **Checking FOMA communication configuration file→P11**

For Bluetooth connection

① **Preparing for Bluetooth connection→P12**

② **Checking modem→P13**

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager→P16

Setting data communication by DOCOMO Connection Manager*

Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager→P20

Performing communication
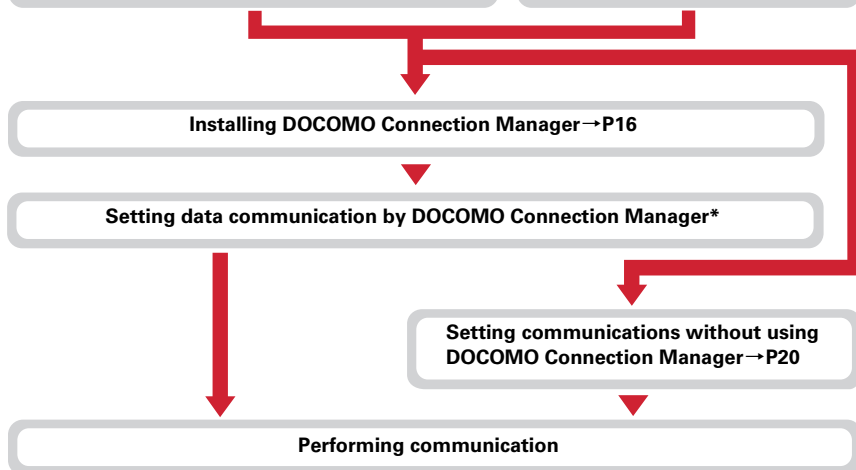
* For setting of DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".

FOMA communication configuration file

When performing Packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting to a PC with USB cable, install FOMA communication configuration file.

Using Bluetooth connection

You can make data communication by connecting a PC compatible with Bluetooth and FOMA terminal using Bluetooth.
● For details, refer to "Preparing for Bluetooth connection".→P12

DOCOMO Connection Manager

When DOCOMO Connection Manager (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication can be simply operated from a PC.

Precautions for installation/uninstallation

● Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running and exit the program if any.

* Exit any resident programs on Windows including antivirus software.

Example : Right-click the icon displayed in the task bar, click "閉じる (Close)" or "終了 (End)".

● For installing/uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file or DOCOMO Connection Manager, make sure that a user with administrator's privilege performs the operation. Installing/uninstalling the software by other users may produce an error. For Windows Vista, when the "ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)" screen appears, click "許可 (Permit)" or "続行 (Continue)", or enter the password and click "OK". For details on PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.

● For operations of a PC, settings of administrator privileges, etc., refer to the Instructions Manual of the PC.

Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal

Connecting/disconnecting to PC is explained here. Installing FOMA communication configuration file is described separately.→P7

● If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC before installing FOMA communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that USB cable has been inserted, and may request the driver. In such a case, click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the displayed screen to end.

● The connection should be made with a PC and FOMA terminal both turned ON.

● In this manual, the description takes the case of FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) for example.

Inserting USB cable

1 **Insert the connector of the USB cable into FOMA terminal's external connection jack.**

2 **Insert the other end of the USB cable connector into the PC USB port.**

Face up the front side shown with a stamp, seal, etc.

Connector

Open the jack cap
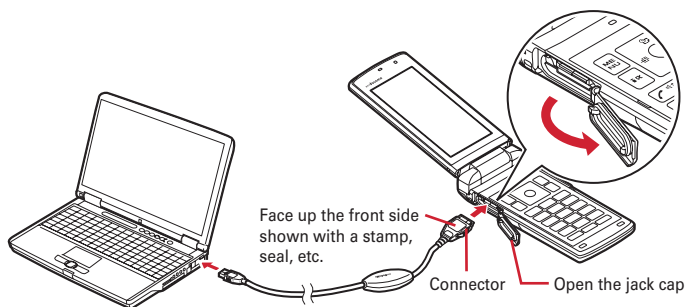
• When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected, 📶 appears on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.

1 **Press the USB cable's release buttons on both sides of the connector (①) and remove the connector from FOMA terminal (②).**

Release button

①
②
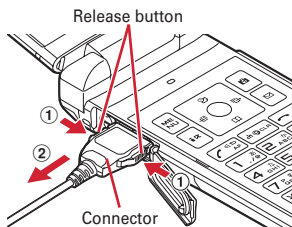
Connector

2 **Remove the USB cable out from the PC.**

INFORMATION
・Be careful not to give excessive force to the connecter of the USB cable when connecting/disconnecting the cable to/from FOMA terminal. When disconnecting the connector, be sure to pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.
・Do not remove the USB cable during data communication. The data communication is disconnected and it may cause data loss or malfunction.

Installing FOMA communication configuration file

To make data communication by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC with USB cable, FOMA communication configuration file is required. Install the file before connecting FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.
To install the file, use the menu in the attached CD-ROM, or specify the folder in the CD-ROM and perform manually.
● Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation". →P6
● For Bluetooth connection, installing FOMA communication configuration file is not required.

Installing from the menu in the attached CD-ROM

● Do not connect FOMA terminal until a message that instructs you to connect FOMA terminal to a PC appears in Step 5.

<Example> Installing the driver under Windows Vista

1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.**

7

2 Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Configuration software)".
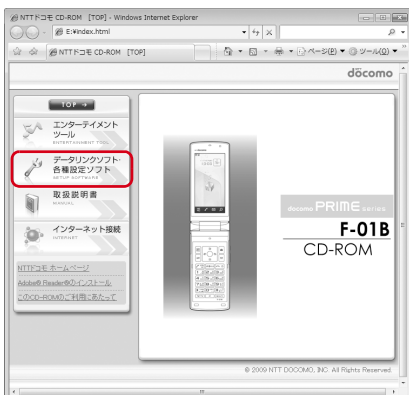
3 Click "インストール (Install)" of "FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA communication configuration file (USB driver))" and double-click "F01Bst.exe" icon from a window displayed.
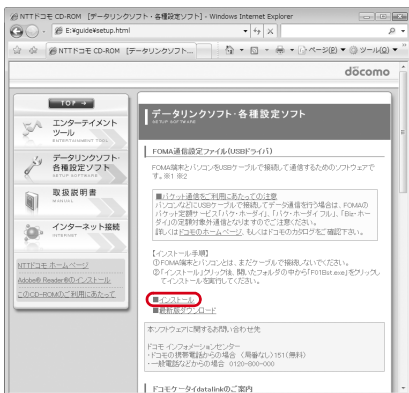
4 Click "インストール開始 (Start installation)".

5 When a message indicating to connect FOMA terminal to the PC appears, connect FOMA terminal to the PC.
- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is ON.

6 On the "インストール完了画面 (Installation completion screen)", click "OK".
Installing "DOCOMO Connection Manager"→P16

Installing manually

For Windows Vista

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.
The "F-01B CD-ROM" menu appears. To install manually, close the menu.
- To install from the menu in the CD-ROM→P8 "Installing from the menu in the attached CD-ROM" Step 2

8

2 **Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.**
   - Make sure that the FOMA terminal is on.
   - The "新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware has been detected)" screen appears. Click "ドライバソフトウェアを検索してインストールします (Search for driver software and install)". (This may not appear depending on a PC to be used.)

3 **Click "ディスクはありません。他の方法を試します (No disk. Try another method)".**

4 **Click "コンピュータを参照してドライバソフトウェアを検索します (Search for driver software, referring to PC)".**

5 **Click "参照 (Reference)"→Select "<CD-ROM drive name> : ¥F01B_USB_ Driver¥WinVista32" and click "OK"→"次へ (Next)".**

   Installation starts.
   - CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.
   - When Windows Vista 64 bit is running on your PC, select "WinVista64".

6 **When the screen indicating that the installation has been successfully completed appears, click "閉じる (Close)".**

7 **The "新しいハードウェアの検出" (Starting the search for new hardware)" screen appears again. Repeat step 3 and the following steps to install all FOMA communication configuration files.**

   When a pop-up message indicating "デバイスを使用する準備ができました。(Preparation for using device is completed.)" appear on the task bar, installing FOMA communication configuration file is completed.
   - The number of repeat times of installation differs depending on the PC environment.

For Windows XP

1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.**

   The "F-01B CD-ROM" menu appears. To install manually, close the menu.
   - To install from the menu in the CD-ROM→P8 "Installing from the menu in the attached CD-ROM" Step 2

2 **Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.**
   - Make sure that the FOMA terminal is on.
   - The search wizard for new hardware starts. When the confirmation screen for connecting Windows Update appears, select "いいえ、今回は接続しません (No, not this time)" and click "次へ (Next)". (This may not appear depending on a PC to be used.)

3 **Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (Installing from the list or another location)". And click "次へ (Next)".**

4 **Select "次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Searching for the most suitable driver in the next location)"→Select "次の場所を含める (Include the following location)"→Click "参照 (Reference)". Next, select "<CD-ROM drive name> : ¥F01B_USB_Driver¥Win2k_XP" and click "OK"→"次へ (Next)".**

   - CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.

5 **When "新しい検索ウィザードの完了 (Completion of new search wizard)" appears, click "完了 (Done)".**

6 **The starting the search wizard for new hardware screen appears again. Repeat step 3 and the following steps to install all FOMA communication configuration files.**

When a pop-up message indicating "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。(New device is installed and preparation for using device is completed.)" appear on the task bar, installing FOMA communication configuration file is completed.
- The number of repeat times of installation differs depending on the PC environment.

For Windows 2000

1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.**

The "F-01B CD-ROM" menu appears. To install manually, close the menu.
- To install from the menu in the CD-ROM→P8 "Installing from the menu in the attached CD-ROM" Step 2

2 **Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.**
- Make sure that the FOMA terminal is on.

3 **On the "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの開始 (Starting the search wizard for new hardware)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".**

4 **Select "デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (Searching for the most suitable driver)"→Click "次へ (Next)".**

5 **Select "場所を指定 (Specify the location)"→Click "次へ (Next)".**

6 **Click "参照"→Select "<CD-ROM drive name> : ¥F01B_USB_Driver¥ Win2k_XP", and select any file on the screen for specifying file and click "開く (Open)"→and click "OK".**
- CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.

7 **Check that "FOMA F01B" is displayed and click "次へ (Next)".**
Installation starts.

8 **When "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了 (Completion of search wizard for new hardware)" appears, click "完了 (Done)".**

9 **The "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの開始 (Starting the search for new hardware)" screen appears again. Repeat step 3 and the following steps to install all FOMA communication configuration files.**

Installing FOMA communication configuration file is completed.
- The number of repeat times of installation differs depending on the PC environment.

Checking FOMA communication configuration file

● When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

<Example> Checking the driver under Windows Vista

1 **Click 🏵 (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)"→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".**

■ **Under Windows XP**
① **Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)"→"システム (System)".**
② **On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".**

■ **Under Windows 2000**
① **Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→ Double-click "システム (System)" icon.**
② **On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".**

2 **Double-click the type of each device→Confirm that the name of the following devices are registered.**
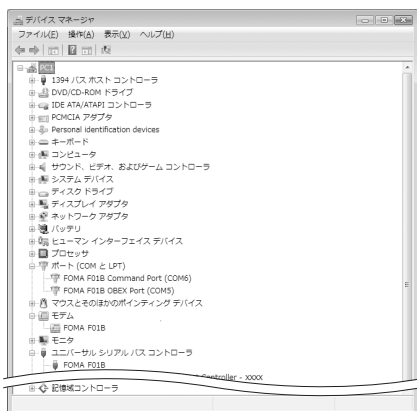
* Device types and names are shown as below. The order to be displayed differs depending on OSs.
  - ポート(COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT)) :
    FOMA F01B Command Port (COMx)*
    FOMA F01B OBEX Port (COMx)*
  - モデム (Modem) : FOMA F01B
  - ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ (Universal Serial Bus Controller) or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Controller) :
    FOMA F01B
* Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers.

Uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file

● Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation".→P6
● Before operating, remove FOMA terminal from the PC.

<Example> Uninstalling the driver under Windows Vista

1 **Click 🏵 (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)".**

■ **Under Windows XP**
Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete Programs)".

■ **Under Windows 2000**
Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→ Double-click "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)" icon.

2 Select "FOMA F01B USB" and click "アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)" (for Windows XP or Windows 2000, "変更と削除 (Change and delete)").

3 Confirm that "FOMA F01B Uninstaller" is displayed and click "はい (Yes)".

The uninstall process starts.

4 If the "ドライバを削除しました (Driver deleted)" screen appears, click "OK".

INFORMATION
- When "FOMA F01B USB" is not displayed on the deletion screen, execute the operations in "Installing FOMA communication configuration file" again and uninstall.→P7

Preparing for Bluetooth® connection

You can make data communication by connecting a PC compatible with Bluetooth and FOMA terminal using Bluetooth.
- For operations of a PC, refer to the instructions manual of the PC you use.
- If the FOMA terminal is put on Bluetooth connection standby, 🚷 (blue) appears on the standby screen. If the FOMA terminal and a PC are trying to be connected to each other, 🚷 (blue) blinks. If they are successfully connected, 🚷 (blue) blinks.

Registering a PC to the FOMA terminal

When connecting using Bluetooth for the first time, registering a PC to FOMA terminal is required.
- To register, entry of Bluetooth passkey is required. Decide Bluetooth passkey by 4-16 digits (one-byte alphanumeric characters) in advance.

1 On FOMA terminal, MENU 6 ✳ 5 .

FOMA terminal enters dial-up registering stand-by.
- If connecting cannot be started within 5 minutes, registration is canceled automatically.

2 Search for FOMA terminal and register a device on a PC.
- Perform while FOMA terminal enters dial-up registering stand-by.
- By some PC instruction manual, "探索 (Quest)" or "サーチ (Search)" may be used instead of "検索 (Retrieve)" or "ペアリング (Pairing)" may be used instead of "機器登録 (Registering device)".

3 When the connecting confirmation screen appears on FOMA terminal, select "はい (Yes)".

4 Enter Bluetooth passkey by FOMA terminal and ● [OK].
- Enter the same Bluetooth passkey on FOMA terminal and a PC.

```
Bluetooth passkey
Enter Bluetooth passkey.
(4-16 digit)
*****        ◁
```

After the PC is registered in FOMA terminal as a device and the registration is completed, return to accepting the dialup device and enter connecting stand-by state.

5 Operate for connecting on a PC.

INFORMATION

- During dialup registering stand-by, connecting stand-by of headset profile, handsfree profile or audio profile is disabled.
- When registering FOMA terminal in a PC, distinguish FOMA terminal by the name of device if the PC recognizes plural devices. When the PC recognizes many devices of the same name, distinguish by the address of device.

Connecting to a registered PC

When connecting a registered PC to FOMA terminal using Bluetooth, set FOMA terminal in connecting stand-by.

1 On FOMA terminal, [MENU] [6] [✳] [4] → [1].

2 Select "Dial-up(DUN)"→ [📷] [Connect].

FOMA terminal enters dial-up connecting stand-by state, and returns to the stand-by display.


```
Start accepting
□ Hands-free(HFP)
□ Headset(HSP)
□ Audio(A2DP)
☑ Dial-up(DUN)          ●
```

3 Operate for connecting on a PC.

Checking modem

● When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed. Confirm the name of modem used on a PC or COM port number set for dialup connection.

<Example> Checking on Windows Vista

1 Click 🔵 (Start)→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)"→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ **Under Windows XP**
　① Click "スタート (Start)"→"コントロールパネル (Control panel)"→"パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)"→"システム (System)".
　② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

■ **Under Windows 2000**
　① Click "スタート (Start)"→Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)"→ Double-click "システム (System)" icon.
　② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab→"デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

2 Double-click the type of each device→Confirm the modem name or COM port number.

- Name of Modem or COM port is shown under "モデム (Modem)", "ポート (COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT))".

Stopping dialup communication service

1 On FOMA terminal, `MENU` `6` `✳` `2`.

2 Select connecting stand-by PC from the registered device list→`2`.

3 Select "Dial-up(DUN)"→`📷` [Stop].

Dialup communication service stops.

Using DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager is convenient software to use flat-rate data communication or pay-as-you-go data communication. You can easily subscribe to mopera U and make a PC setting according to your subscription status.
Also, you can check an estimate of data communication volume or usage fees by the charge counter function.
The method of installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained here.

Not displayed in default setting. For details, refer to ヘルプ (Help) of ドコモ コネクションマネージャ "DOCOMO Connection Manager".

Fee counter

Connect/Disconnect button
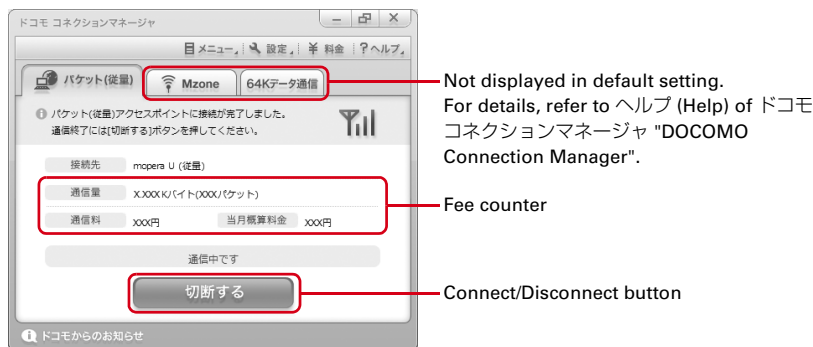
● For Internet connection with FOMA terminal, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider (mopera U etc.) applicable to services and data communication.
For details, refer to DOCOMO website.

INFORMATION

■ **Using pay-as-you-go data communication (including i-mode flat-rate packet communication services)**
・ Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images using packet communication and downloading (example: updating of application, music, movie, OS or anti-virus software) will require high charges.
Note that FOMA flat-rate packet services such as Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full and Biz-hodai are not applied to the data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC or another device with a USB cable.

■ **Using flat-rate data plan**
・ For using of flat-rate data plan, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider applicable to flat-rate data communication charging plan. For details, refer to DOCOMO website.

■ **Using mopera**
・ For connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.
http://www.mopera.net/mopera/support/index.html

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, check the items below and perform to change setting of software/uninstall as required.
● Prepare FOMA terminal, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) in advance (For Bluetooth connection, USB Cable is not required).
● Check the contents of subscription for services and Internet service provider.
● If installing connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager, change the setting not to be activated automatically as required.→P16 "Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager"

Changing setting of Internet Explorer

● Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, set to "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)" for connection setting at "インターネットオプション (Internet option)" field of Internet Explorer in advance.

<Example> Changing under Windows Vista

1 Click 🔵 (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"Internet Explorer".

■ **Under Windows XP, Windows 2000**
Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→Click "Internet Explorer".

2 Click "ツール (Tool)"→"インターネットオプション (Internet option)".

3 Click "接続 (Connection)" tab→Select "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)".
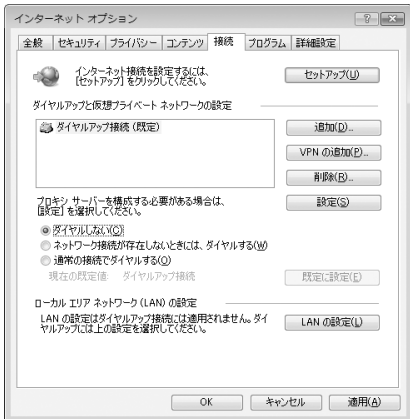
4 Click "OK".

DOCOMO Connection Manager includes same function as that of software below and using together is not required. Perform to change setting not to be activated or uninstall as required.
- mopera U start up tool
- mopera U connection & setting tool
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA Byte counter

And, when using Mzone (Public wireless LAN connection) by DOCOMO Connection Manager, uninstall the following public wireless LAN connection software.
And, when installing all at once, Mzone connection cannot be used by DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- U公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (U public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティプログラム (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility program)

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

● After performing to install FOMA communication configuration file, when the screen for installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager appears, click "OK" and start from Step 4.
● When FOMA communication configuration file is installed already or making data communication only by Bluetooth connection, start from Step 1.

<Example> Installing under Windows Vista

1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.**

2 **Click "インターネット接続 (Internet connection)".**

16

3 **Click "インストール (Install)" field in step ③ of "本CD-ROMからのFOMAデータ通信の設定方法 (Setting method of FOMA data communication from this CD-ROM)".**

- When the warning screen of security is displayed, click "実行 (Execute)".

- For Windows XP, when the confirmation screen for installing of MSXML6/Wireless LAN API is displayed, click "Install" to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API. After performing to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API, reboot Windows to start installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager automatically.

4 **Click "次へ (Next)".**

5 **Confirm "注意事項 (Precautions)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

17

6 **Confirm the contents of** ソフトウェア使用許諾契約 **(Software license agreement) and if you agree to the agreement, select "**使用許諾契約の条項に同意します **(Agree to the clauses of the agreement)" and click "**次へ **(Next)".**
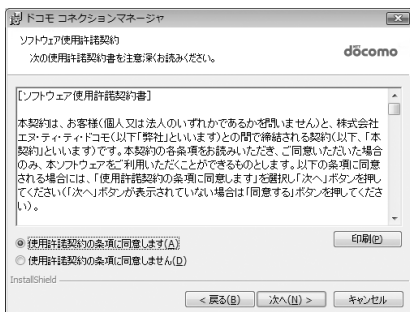
7 **Confirm the installing folder and click "**次へ **(Next)".**
- To change the installation destination, click "変更 (Change)" and specify any installation destination.
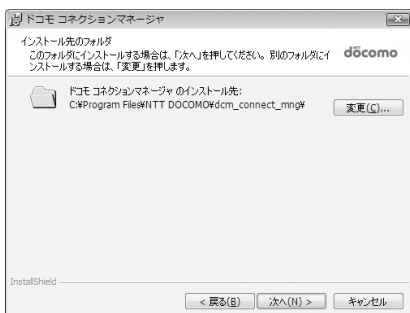
8 **Click "**インストール **(Install)".**
Installation starts.
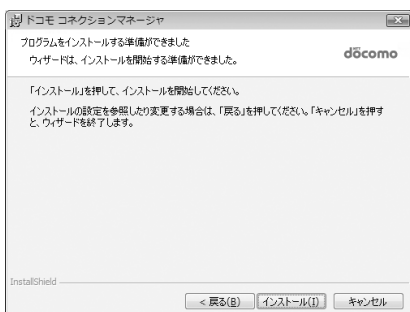
9 **When the "InstallShieldウィザードを完了しました (Performed InstallShield wizard)" screen appears, click "完了 (Done)".**

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is completed.

INFORMATION

・Installation may take a few minutes.
・When a message notifying you to reboot Windows is displayed, follow the instruction of screen and reboot.
・Do not install during data communication.

Starting DOCOMO Connection Manager

● Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

<Example> Setting under Windows Vista

1 **Click (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All Programs)"→"NTT DOCOMO"→ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)"→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".**

■ **Under Windows XP, Windows 2000**

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" (for Windows 2000, "プログラム (Program)"→"NTT DOCOMO"→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)→"ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

DOCOMO Connection Manager starts.

When booting a PC at first time, the setting wizard screen appears automatically.

・According to the setting wizard, perform to set for making data communication connecting to Internet.
After setting, you can perform communication using DOCOMO Connection Manager.
For details, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".

- Just exiting the Internet browser or mail software may not disconnect communication. When you do not use communication, be sure to disconnect the communication from "切断する (Disconnect)" button of DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- Please note that if auto update is set for OS update etc., the software is updated automatically and high cost may be charged for the packet communication fee.
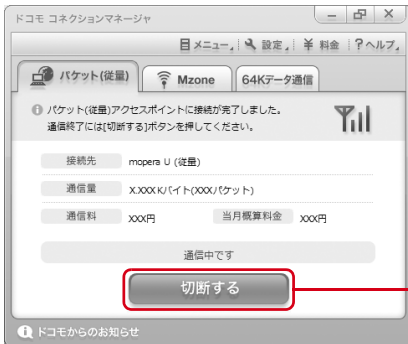
Connect/Disconnect button

Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager

The method of dialup connection setup without DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained.
● When using an access point compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as mopera for packet communication, make settings using DOCOMO Connection Manager.

Flow of dialup network setting

● Flow of setup for data communication→P5
● Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)*→P21
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to set.

Setting Show/Hide caller ID*→P22
- Set as required.

Setting Dialup Network
- Setting for Windows Vista→P23
- Setting for Windows XP→P26
- Setting for Windows 2000→P28

* Set for packet communication.
Communication software to input AT commands is required for settings.
The method of setting using "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)" that comes with Windows 2000 and Windows XP is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)". For Windows Vista, set using the software supported by Windows Vista (Follow the method for the software to be used.).

Setting the dialup connection (APN)

The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connections (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers (cid) between 1 and 10 in FOMA terminal. "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and "mopera.net" (APN) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 or 4-10.

● For the dialup connections (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
● For USB cable connection and Bluetooth connection, setting each dialup connections (APN) is required.
● For packet communication, if switching between USB cable connection and Bluetooth connection, setting the dialup connections (APN) is required again.
● The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and FOMA terminal phonebook is as shown below.

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

● The registered cid become the connection number in the dialup connection numbers setting.

Setting the dialup connection (APN)
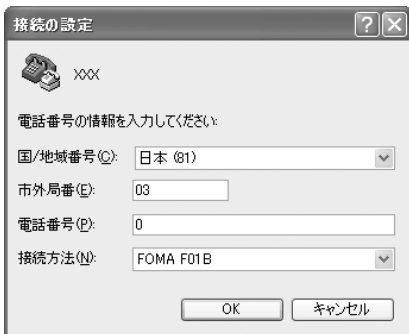
<Example> Setting under Windows XP

1 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".

2 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)"→Click "OK".

• The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "名前 (Name)".
　￥/:＊?<>│"

3 Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)"
→Select "接続方法 (Connection method)"→Click "OK".
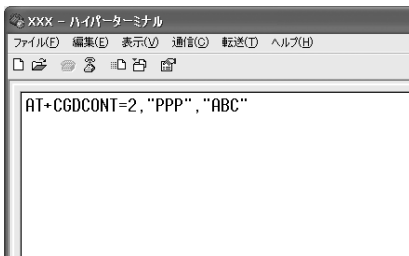
- "市外局番 (Area code)" differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.
- Set as follows at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F01B".
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "ご使用の Bluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカが提供している Bluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

4 Click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.

5 Enter the dialup connection (APN) in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "<PDP_TYPE>", "<APN>""→ ⏎ .

<cid>   : Enter any number between 2 or 4-10.
<PDP_TYPE> : IP or PPP
<APN>   : Dialup connection (APN)

- +CGDCONT command→P41 "Supplement to AT command"
- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press ⏎ .

6 Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "ハイパー ターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".

7 When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)"→When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".

Setting Show/Hide caller ID

You can set to show/hide call ID for packet communication at once.
Caller ID is your important information. Take care when deciding to disclose your caller ID.
● If "Not notify" is set when using mopera U or mopera, connection is unavailable.

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

1 Perform Step 1 - 4 in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)".

2 **Enter notify/not notify of caller ID in the format "AT∗DGPIR=<n>"→ ⏎ .**

<n> : 0-2

0 : Connect directly (Default)
1 : Connect prefixing 184 (Not notify)
2 : Connect prefixing 186 (Notify)


```
AT∗DGPIR=0
```
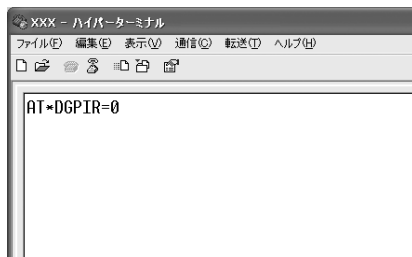
• If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press ⏎ .

3 **Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".**

4 **When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)"→When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".**

Show/Hide caller ID function by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) to the dialup connection number.

● The Show/Hide of caller ID when both of the ∗DGPIR command and dialup network settings are set is as shown below.

Setting made by ∗DGPIR command / Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	No setting	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
∗99∗∗∗3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184∗99∗∗∗3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186∗99∗∗∗3#	Caller ID is sent.		

Setting dialup network

Setting for Windows Vista

1 **Click ⊕ (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".**

2 **Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Set up connection or network)".**

23

3 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up dialup connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".

■ **When the "どのモデムを使いますか？ (Which modem will you use?)" screen is displayed**
  For USB cable connection : Click "FOMA F01B".
  For Bluetooth connection : Click "ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use)" or "Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer)".

4 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Dialup phone number)" ("＊99＊＊＊<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "接続名 (Connection name)" and click "接続 (Connect)".

<cid> : P21 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"
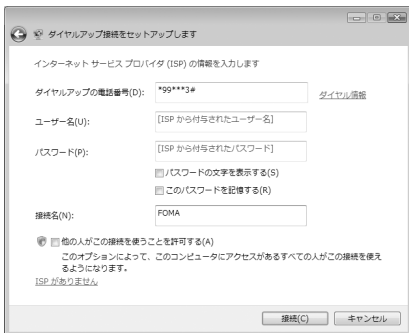
- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	＊99＊＊＊3#	＊8701
mopera	＊99＊＊＊1#	＊9601

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.
  ¥ / : ＊ ? < > |

5 On the connecting screen, click "スキップ (Skip)".
- Only make settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

6 On the "インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in Internet connection test)" screen, click "接続をセットアップします (Set up connection)".

7 Click "閉じる (Close)".

8 Click 🔵 (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".

9 Right-click the dialup connection created and click "プロパティ (Property)".

24

10 Confirm the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.

- When multipul modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
  For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F01B (Modem-FOMA F01B)" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカーが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

11 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below.
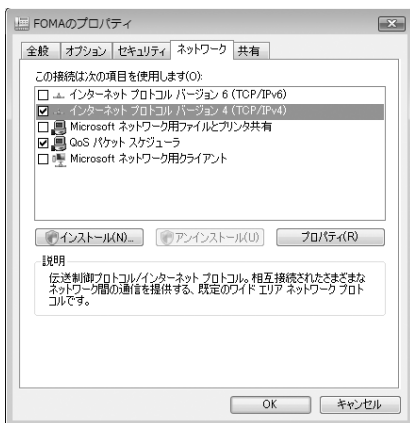
- Uncheck (☐) "インターネットプロトコルバージョン6 (TCP/IPv6) (Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6))".
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPv4) (Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set various information.
- When settings of "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" and other items have been requested from the provider, etc., check/uncheck as required.

12 Click "オプション (Option)" tab→Click "PPP設定 (PPP settings)".

13 Uncheck all items (☐) and click "OK".

14 Click "OK".
Performing communication→P32

1 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)".

2 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの開始 (New connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

3 Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".

4 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually)" and click "次へ (Next)".

5 Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect)" and click "次へ (Next)".

■ **When "デバイスの選択 (Device selection)" screen is displayed**
For USB cable connection : Select "モデム-FOMA F01B (Modem-FOMA F01B)" and click "次へ (Next)".
For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" and click "次へ (Next)".

6 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "ISP名 (ISP name)"→Click "次へ (Next)".

• You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "ISP名 (ISP name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.
¥ /: * ?<> │ "

7 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" * 99 * * * <cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Click "次へ (Next)".

<cid> : P21 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"

• When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
mopera	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

8 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)"→Select all items as shown below and click "次へ (Next)".

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)", "パスワード (Password)" or "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)".

9 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completion)" screen, click "完了 (Done)".

10 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)".

11 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "プロパティ (Property)".
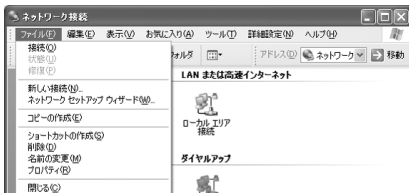
12 Confirm the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.

- When plural modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
  For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F01B (Modem-FOMA F01B)" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

27

13 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below→Click "設定 (Settings)".

• Since "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" settings in "この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection)" can not be changed, leave it as it is.
• When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set necessary information.

14 Uncheck all items (☐) and click "OK".
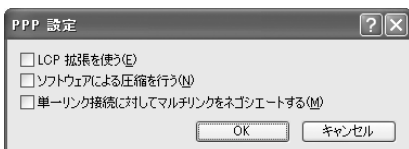
15 Click "OK".
Performing communication→P32

Setting for Windows 2000

1 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)".

2 Double-click "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)" icon.
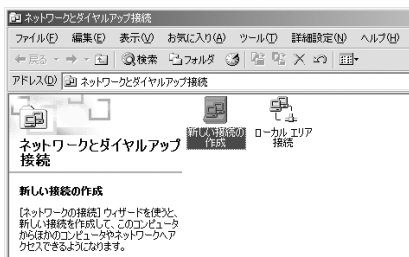
■ **When "所在地情報 (Location information)" screen is displayed**
① **Enter the area code in "市外局番／エリアコード (Area code)"→Click "OK"**
② **Click "OK" on the "電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)" screen.**

3 On the "ネットワークの接続ウィザードの開始 (Network connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

28

4 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".

5 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))" and click "次へ (Next)".

6 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)" and click "次へ (Next)".

■ **When "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" screen is displayed**
For USB cable connection : Select "FOMA F01B" and click "次へ (Next)".
For Bluetooth connection : Select "(ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem-(Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "(Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" and click "次へ (Next)".

7 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" ("＊99＊＊＊<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→ Click "詳細設定 (Detailed settings)".

<cid> : P21 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"
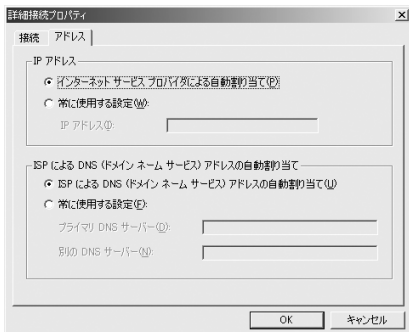
• When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	＊99＊＊＊3#	＊8701
mopera	＊99＊＊＊1#	＊9601

• Uncheck ( ) "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)".

8 Set each item in "接続 (Connection)" tab as shown below.
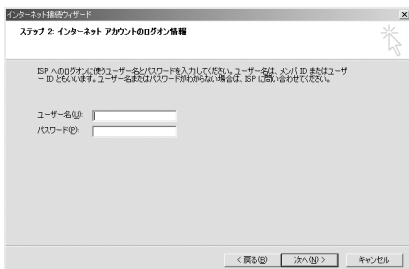
9 **Click "アドレス (Address)" tab→Set each item.**

- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., set various information.
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to change the setting.
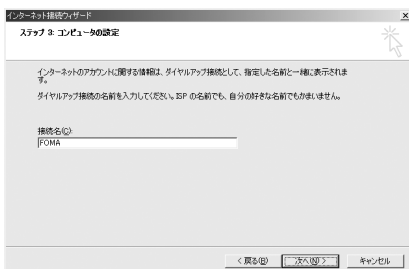
10 **Click "OK"→Click "次へ (Next)".**

11 **Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Click "次へ (Next)".**

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)". When you click "次へ (Next)" and the screen to confirm the blank entry appears, click "はい (Yes)".

12 **Enter the desired dialup connection name in "接続名 (Connection name)"→ Click "次へ (Next)".**

- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)".

13 **On "インターネットメールアカウントのセットアップ (Setup the internet mail account)" screen, select "いいえ (No)" and click "次へ (Next)".**

14 **Click "完了 (Done)".**

15 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "プロパティ (Property)".
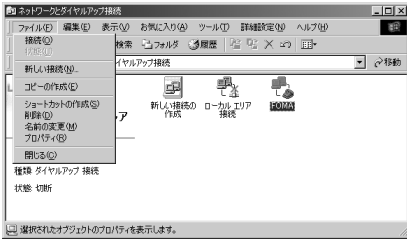
16 Confirm the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.
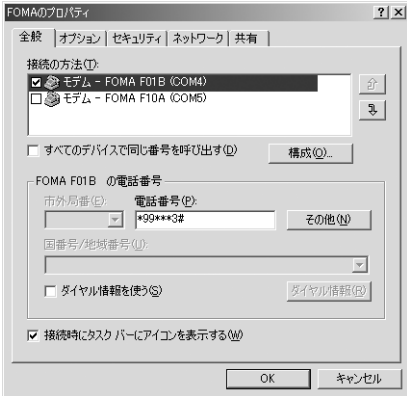
- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, set as follows.
  For USB cable connection : Select only "モデム-FOMA F01B (Modem-FOMA F01B)" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
  For Bluetooth connection : Select "モデム- (ご使用のBluetoothリンク経由標準モデム) (Modem- (Standard modem via Bluetooth link you use))" or "モデム- (Bluetooth機器メーカが提供しているBluetoothモデム) (Modem- (Bluetooth modem provided by Bluetooth device manufacturer))" at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (☐) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- When the modem is changed, all items in "電話番号 (Phone number)" is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.
- Uncheck (☐) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

17 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below→Click "設定 (Settings)".

31
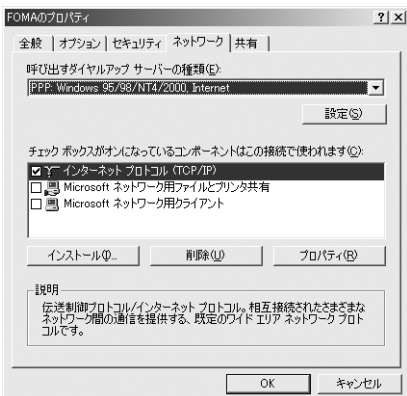
18 **Uncheck all items (☐) and click "OK".**
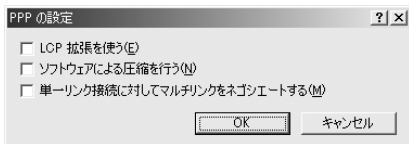
19 **Click "OK".**

Performing communication→P32

Performing communication via dialup connection

Starting communication and disconnection are explained here.

<Example> Performing communication under Windows Vista

1 **Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.**

For USB cable connection→P6
For Bluetooth connection→P13

2 **Click 🔵 (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)"→Select the dialup connection and click "接続 (Connect)".**

■ **Under Windows XP**

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories) →"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)"→Double-click the connection icon.

■ **Under Windows 2000**

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)"→Double-click the connection icon

3 **Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Click "ダイヤル (Dial)".**

- When using mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- When "ユーザー名 (User name)" was entered or "パスワード (Password)" was saved while settings, these entries are no longer necessary.
- Click "OK" when the connection established screen is displayed.

• FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet communication or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established.

```
Connected Packet

      DATA
```

```
Connected 64K

      DATA


          ¥8701
          27sec
```
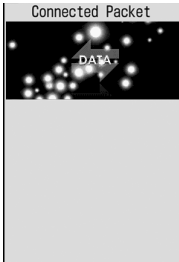
For packet
communication
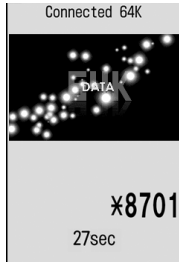
For 64K data
communication

• The communication speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
• The communication is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the PC browser may not disconnect communication. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation.

<Example> Under Windows Vista

1 **Right-click** 📶 **in the task tray→Select "切断 (Disconnect)" and click the dialup connection to disconnect.**

■ **Under Windows XP, Windows 2000**
    Click dial-up icon in the task tray→Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters.

<Example> Connecting to mopera U with ATD command

ATD＊99＊＊＊3#↵

Return character : Press Enter key. (Command separator)

Parameter : Command's argument

Command : Command name

AT commands and their parameters must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character until the character directly preceding ↵ must be entered on a single line. Each line can be up to 256 characters including "AT".

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, a PC must be in terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. When terminal mode is set, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

● Offline mode

FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control it.

● Online data mode

FOMA terminal is communicating. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the sent characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.

● Online command mode

AT commands can be used even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

■ **Switching between online data mode and online command mode**

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures.

- Enter +++ command or code set in the S2 register.
- Turn the RS-232C* ER signal OFF when set in "AT&D1".
  * The USB or Bluetooth interface emulates an RS-232C signal line so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ↵ ".

INFORMATION

- When making a call or sending an AT command from external device, it is sent from Number A with 2in1 in Dual mode or A mode, and from Number B in B mode.

34

● AT command that can be used via the FOMA F01B (Modem).
● Entering "￥" may cause "\" to appear depending on the font setting for a PC or communication software.
● If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
A/ A/ OK	Execute the previously executed command again. When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.
AT AT ↵ OK	Use commands on this list by prefixing to commands other than A/ or +++. When using only this command, "OK" is returned with FOMA terminal enabled for using AT commands.
ATA RING ATA ↵ CONNECT	Perform the receiving process when entered while receiving a packet communication or 64K data communication. The following commands can be entered when receiving a packet communication. ATA184 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function OFF ATA186 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function ON
ATD ATD＊99＊＊＊1# ↵ CONNECT 460800	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Performs calling process for packet communication. If <cid> or ＊＊＊<cid> is omitted, <cid>=1 is set. ATD [parameter] [phone number] : Perform calling process for 64K data communication. Calling process is not permitted if phone number contains characters other than the following. 0-9, ＊, #, A, a, B, b, C, c The following characters and a space can be entered but are not recognized in dialing. ,(comma), !, -, @, D, d, P, p, T, t, W, w Setting Show/Hide caller ID is enabled by inserting 186 or 184 after ATD. ATDN or ATDL can be used for redial calling.
ATE<n>　　　　*1 ATE1 ↵ OK	Set whether FOMA terminal will return echo for command sent from a PC. n=0 : Echo OFF　　n=1 : Echo ON (default) Normal usage is n=1. If the PC has an echo function, setting this command to n=0 prevents double display of characters.
ATH ATH ↵ NO CARRIER	Disconnect line when entered during a communication. Execute in online command mode.→P34
ATI<n> ATI0 ↵ NTT DoCoMo OK	Display the confirmation code. n=0 : "NTT DoCoMo"　　n=1 : Display model name of FOMA terminal n=2 : Display version of FOMA terminal　　　　n=3 : Display elements of ACMP signals n=4 : Display details of functions that can be communicated by FOMA terminal in numeric
ATO ATO ↵ CONNECT 460800	Return from online command mode to online data mode during communication.
ATQ<n>　　　　*1 ATQ0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display result code. n=0 : Display (default)　　n=1 : Not display When ATQ1 is executed, "OK" is not returned.
ATS0=<n>　　　*1 ATS0=0 ↵ OK	Set number of rings until FOMA terminal receives communication automatically. n=0 : Not receive automatically (default) n=1-255 : Receive automatically with specified number of rings ATS0? : Display current settings
ATS2=<n> ATS2=43 ↵ OK	Set escape character. n=0-127 (default : n=43)　　When n=127 is set, escape is unavailable. ATS2? : Display current settings
ATS3=<n> ATS3=13 ↵ OK	Set the carriage return (CR) character that identifies the end of AT command character string. Appended to end of echoed command character string and result code. n=13 (fixed value) ATS3? : Display current settings

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
ATS4=<n> ATS4=10 ↵ OK	Set the line feed (LF) character. When result code is displayed as alphabetic characters, appends the character after the carriage return (CR) character. n=10 (fixed value) ATS4? : Display current settings
ATS5=<n> ATS5=8 ↵ OK	Set the back space (BS) character. When this character is detected during command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. n=8 (fixed value) ATS5? : Display current settings
ATS6=<n> ATS6=5 ↵ OK	Set pause time (seconds) until dialing commences but do not operate. n= : 2-10 (default : n=5) ATS6? : Display current settings
ATS8=<n> ATS8=3 ↵ OK	Set pause time (seconds) until commas are dialed but do not operate. n=0-255 (default : n=3) ATS8? : Display current settings
ATS10=<n> *1 ATS10=1 ↵ OK	Set the delay time (1/10 seconds) for automatic disconnection but do not operate. n=1-255 (default : n=1) ATS10? : Display current settings
ATS30=<n> ATS30=0 ↵ OK	Set a period of time (minutes) with no data transmission/reception to terminate the connection for 64K data communications. n=0-255 : (default : n=0, n=0 indicates that inactive timer is set to OFF.) ATS30? : Display current settings
ATS103=<n> ATS103=1 ↵ OK	Set the separator used to append and send received sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : * n=1 : / (default) n=2 : ￥ or \ ATS103? : Display current settings
ATS104=<n> ATS104=1 ↵ OK	Set the separator used to append and send outgoing sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : # n=1 : % (default) n=2 : & ATS104? : Display current settings
ATV<n> *1 ATV1 ↵ OK	Set result code display method. n=0 : Number display n=1 : Alphabetical display (default) When ATV0 is executed, "0" is not returned to the same line.
ATX<n> *1 ATX4 ↵ OK	Set whether to detect busy or dial tones and whether to display the speed in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. Busy tone detection : Send "BUSY" response when dialup connection is busy. Dial tone detection : Detect whether FOMA terminal is connected. n=0 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed is displayed n=1 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=2 : No busy tone, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=3 : Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=4 : Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed (default) When n=0 is set, AT&E and AT￥V command will be unavailable.
ATZ *3 ATZ ↵ OK (When in offline mode)	Reset the current setting to the registered state. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT%V AT%V ↵ Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT&C<n> *1 AT&C1 ↵ OK	Set the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE. n=0 : Always ON n=1 : Vary according to line connection status (default) When set to n=0, the CD signal is set to ON directly before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF directly before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT&D<n> *1 AT&D2 ↵ OK	Set the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF while online data mode takes effect. n=0 : Ignore status (status is always considered to be ON) n=1 : Move to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF n=2 : Disconnect line and move to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default)
AT&E<n> *1 AT&E1 ↵ OK	Set the speed display used when connection is made. n=0 : Display communication speed of wireless zone n=1 : Display communication speed between a PC and FOMA terminal (default)
AT&F AT&F ↵ OK (When in offline mode)	Reset the current setting to the default. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT&S<n> *1 AT&S0 ↵ OK	Set control of the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE. n=0 : Always ON (default)　　　n=1 : ON at time of connection
AT&W AT&W ↵ OK	Register the current settings in FOMA terminal.
AT＊DANTE AT＊DANTE ↵ ＊DANTE : 3 OK	Indicate FOMA terminal reception level in the "＊DANTE : <n>" format. n=0 : Out of service area n=1 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 0 or 1 antenna. n=2 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 2 antennas. n=3 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 3 antennas. AT＊DANTE=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT＊DGANSM=<n> *2 AT＊DGANSM=0 ↵ OK	Set to reject or permit incoming packet communications. n=0 : Reject setting = OFF, Accept setting = OFF (default) n=1 : Reject setting=ON　　　n=2 : Accept setting=ON AT＊DGANSM? : Display current settings AT＊DGANSM=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DGAPL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT＊DGAPL=0,1 ↵ OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to permit incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN permitted for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN permitted for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to/deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT＊DGAPL? : Display current settings AT＊DGAPL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DGARL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT＊DGARL=0,1 ↵ OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to refuse incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN rejected for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN rejected for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to/deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT＊DGARL? : Display current settings AT＊DGARL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DGPIR=<n> *2 AT＊DGPIR=0 ↵ OK	Set Caller ID notification when packet communication connection is being performed. This command is available when a communication is sent or received. n=0 : Connect to APN directly (default)　　　n=1 : Connect to APN prefixing 184 n=2 : Connect to APN prefixing 186 When Show/Hide caller ID is specified by dialup network→P23 AT＊DGPIR? : Display current settings AT＊DGPIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT＊DRPW AT＊DRPW ↵ ＊DRPW : 0 OK	Indicate an index for the reception power of the radio waves that FOMA terminal receive. AT＊DRPW=? : Display a list of displayable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CAOC	Display last call cost.
AT+CAOC ↵ +CAOC : "000024" OK	
AT+CBC	Display FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC : <bcs>,<bcl>" format. bcs=0 : Powered by the battery pack bcs=1 : Not powered by the battery pack bcs=2 : Battery pack removed bcs=3 : Power-supply error bcl=0 : No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1-100 : Battery remained AT+CBC=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CBC ↵ +CBC : 0,100 OK	
AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 *1	Set the line to use (Setting of bearer service) n=116 : 64K data communication (default) n=134 : 64K videophone AT+CBST? : Display current settings AT+CBST=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CBST=116,1,0 ↵ OK	
AT+CDIP=<n> *1	Set whether to notify received sub address. And, subscription status of Multi Number can be confirmed. n=0 : The information of sub address is not displayed. (default) n=1 : The information of sub address is displayed. m=0 : Multi Number not subscribed. m=1 : Multi Number subscribed. AT+CDIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CDIP:<n>,<m>" format AT+CDIP=? : List of the settable values is displayed.
AT+CDIP=0 OK	
AT+CEER	Display the reason of immediate disconnection. Disconnection reason list→P41
AT+CEER ↵ +CEER : 36 OK	
AT+CGDCONT *2	Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.→P41
→P41	
AT+CGEQMIN *2	Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.→P42
→P42	
AT+CGEQREQ *2	Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.→P42
→P42	
AT+CGMR	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+CGMR ↵ 1234567890123456 OK	
AT+CGREG=<n> *1	Set whether to report network service registration status (Within/Out). n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CGREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of packet service area stat=1 : Within packet service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within packet service area (during international roaming) AT+CGREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CGREG : <n>, <stat>" format AT+CGREG=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CGREG=0 ↵ OK	
AT+CGSN	Display FOMA terminal serial No.
AT+CGSN ↵ 123456789012345 OK	
AT+CLIP=<n> *1	Set whether to display sender's caller ID on a PC when receiving 64K data communication. n=0 : Not display result (default) n=1 : Display result m=0 : Network setting not to send caller ID m=1 : Network setting to send caller ID m=2 : Unknown AT+CLIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIP : <n>,<m>" format AT+CLIP=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CLIP=0 ↵ OK	

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CLIR=<n> *2 AT+CLIR=2 ↵ OK	Set Caller ID notification when sending 64K data communication. n=0 : Use the setting in service agreement n=1 : Not send n=2 : Send (default) m=0 : CLIR not operating (always sends) m=1 : CLIR operating (never sends) m=2 : Unknown m=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send) m=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default=sends) AT+CLIR? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIR : <n>,<m>" format AT+CLIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CMEE=<n> *1 AT+CMEE=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display an error report at FOMA terminal. n=0 : Display "ERROR" and no result code (default) n=1 : Use result code, displaying reason as number n=2 : Use result code, displaying reason as alphabetic characters Display reasons in the "+CME ERROR : xxxx" format when n=1 or n=2 is set (xxxx = number or alphabetic characters).→P41 "Error messages list" AT+CMEE? : Display current settings AT+CMEE=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CNUM AT+CNUM ↵ +CNUM : ,"090XXXXXXXX", 129 OK	Display FOMA terminal's own phone number in the "+CNUM : ,"<number>",<type>" format. number : Own phone number (With 2in1, display Number A in Dual mode or A mode and Number B in B mode) type=129 : International access code + not included type=145 : International access code + included
AT+COPS=<n>,2,<oper> *2 AT+COPS=0 ↵ OK	Set search method for network operator to connect. n=0 : Auto (default) n=1 : Manual n=3 : No mapping When n=1 is set, set PLMN Number in hexadecimal value for <oper>. AT+COPS? : Display current settings AT+COPS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CPAS AT+CPAS ↵ +CPAS : 0 OK	Display whether FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS : <n>" format. n=0 : Possible n=1 : Impossible n=2 : Status unknown n=3 : Possible and receiving n=4 : Possible and communicating AT+CPAS=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CPIN="<pin>", "<newpin>" AT+CPIN="0000" ↵ OK	Enter these commands for entering PIN/PIN2 codes or PUK with PIN code ON. To enter PUK, enter new PIN/PIN2 code in <newpin>. Even if entering in <newpin> when entry of PIN/PIN2 code is request, PIN/PIN2 code cannot be changed. n=READY : Entry of code not requested n=SIM PIN : Entry of PIN code waited n=SIM PIN2 : Entry of PIN2 code waited n=SIM PUK : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN code n=SIM PUK2 : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN2 code AT+CPIN? : Display the code currently requested in "+CPIN : <n>" format
AT+CR=<n> *1 AT+CR=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to display the communication type before "CONNECT" is displayed during connection. n=0 : Not display (default) n=1 : Display the communication type in the "+CR : <serv>" format serv=GPRS : Packet communication serv=SYNC : 64K data communication serv=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CR? : Display current settings AT+CR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CRC=<n> *1 AT+CRC=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to use +CRING result codes when communication is received. n=0 : Not use (default) n=1 : Use "+CRING : <type>" result codes type=GPRS "PPP",,,"<APN>" : Packet communication type=SYNC : 64K data communication type=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CRC? : Display current settings AT+CRC=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CREG=<n> *1 AT+CREG=0 ↵ OK	Set whether to report network service registration status (Within/Out). n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of sound service area stat=1 : Within sound service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within sound service area (during international roaming) AT+CREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CREG=? : Display a list of assignable values

Upper slot : Command / Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CUSD=<n>,"<str>" *1 AT+CUSD=0,"012345678" ↵ OK	Set Additional service (Register USSD) of Network Services. Enter Service code provided by DOCOMO in <str>. n=0 : Not answer mid result (default) n=1 : Answer mid result in "+CUSD : <m>, "<str>",0" format m=0 : Information not requested m=1 : Information requested AT+CUSD? : Display current settings AT+CUSD=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+FCLASS=<n> *1 AT+FCLASS=0 ↵ OK	Set communication type supported by FOMA terminal. n=0 : Only data supported (fixed value) AT+FCLASS? : Display current settings AT+FCLASS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+GCAP AT+GCAP ↵ +GCAP : +CGSM,+FCLASS, +W OK	Display the range of AT commands supported by FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP : <n>" format. n=+CGSM : Support GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part) n=+FCLASS : Support +FCLASS commands n=+W : Support +W commands
AT+GMI AT+GMI ↵ FUJITSU OK	Display FOMA terminal manufacturer name.
AT+GMM AT+GMM ↵ FOMA F01B OK	Display model name of FOMA terminal.
AT+GMR AT+GMR ↵ Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+IFC=<n,m> *1 AT+IFC=2,2 ↵ OK	Set how to control local flow between a PC and FOMA terminal. n, m=0 : No flow control n, m=1 : Perform XON/XOFF flow control n, m=2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) Perform flow control (default) AT+IFC? : Display the current settings and status in the "+IFC : <n>, <m>" format (n is the value of DCE by DTE, and m is the value of DTE by DCE) AT+IFC=? : List of the settable values is displayed
AT+WS46=<n> *1	Display wireless network used when sending communication in n number. When entering AT+WS46=<n>, ERROR is returned because it cannot be changed. n=12 : GSM network n=22 : 3G network (FOMA) n=25 : GSM or 3G network (FOMA) (default) AT+WS46? : Display current settings AT+WS46=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT¥S AT¥S ↵ E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 ・・・(snip)・・・ S104=001 OK	Display the currently set commands and S register settings.
AT¥V<n> *1 AT¥V0 ↵ OK	Set whether to use expanded result codes when connection is made. n=0 : Not use expanded result codes (default) n=1 : Use expanded result codes
+++ +++ (not displayed) OK	Move from online data mode to online command mode when entered during a communication. The escape guard interval is 1 second (fixed value).

*1 Registered in FOMA terminal by &W command.

*2 Not reset by &F and Z commands.

*3 When Z command is executed before the &W command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Description
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	The remote device is called but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM
15	SIM wrong	Other than DOCOMO SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

● <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1-10" can be registered in FOMA terminal. An APN "mopera.ne.jp" (PPP connection) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and an APN "mopera.net" (IP connection) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default.
<APN> is an optional string for each connection to indicate dialup connection.

■ Command name : +CGDCONT=[parameter]

- **Outline**
  Sets dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
- **Format**
  +CGDCONT= [<cid> [,"<PDP_TYPE>" [,"<APN>"]]]
- **Parameter description**
  <cid> : 1-10
  <PDP_TYPE> : IP or PPP
  <APN> : Optional
- **Example of execution**
  The command used to register an APN named "abc" for PPP connection (when <cid> =2).
  AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc" ⏎
  OK

41

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGDCONT= : Return all <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGDCONT=<cid> : Return the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGDCONT? : Display current settings.
  AT+CGDCONT=? : Display a list of assignable values.

■ **Command name : +CGEQMIN=[parameter]**
- **Outline**
  Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.
- **Format**
  AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid> [,,<Maximum bitrate UL> [,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
- **Parameter description**
  <cid> : 1-10
  <Maximum bitrate UL> : None (default) or 384
  <Maximum bitrate DL> : None (default) or 7232
  * For <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL>, the maximum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. If "384" and "7232" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.
- **Example of execution**
  (1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
      AT+CGEQMIN=2 ↵
      OK
  (2) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and 7232kbps download (when <cid>=4)
      AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,7232 ↵
      OK
  (3) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
      AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384 ↵
      OK
  (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 7232kbps download (when <cid>=6)
      AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,7232 ↵
      OK
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGEQMIN= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays current settings.
  AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

■ **Command name : +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**
- **Outline**
  Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.
- **Format**
  AT+CGEQREQ= [<cid>]
- **Parameter description**
  Only commands that require connection at 64-384kbps upload, 64-7232kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each <cid>.
  <cid> : 1-10
- **Example of execution**
  (when <cid>=3)
  AT+CGEQREQ=3 ↵
  OK
- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**
  AT+CGEQREQ= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.
  AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays current settings.
  AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

● When ATV command is set to n=1 (default), the result code is displayed in alphabetic characters. When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed numerically. →P36

■ Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to other party
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completed connection Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	Network restriction in place (The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.)
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

■ Extended result code

• When AT&E is set to n=0

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and base station
122	CONNECT 64000	64000bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384000bps
133	CONNECT 3648000	3648000bps
135	CONNECT 7232000	7232000bps

• When AT&E is set to n=1

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and a PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460800bps

* To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to a PC with a USB cable or Bluetooth function.

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connect via 64K data communication (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connect via 64K videophone
5	PACKET	Connect via packet communication

■ Display example of result code

When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the settings of AT￥V command, only "CONNECT" is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example　　: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
　　　　　　　　　　　　　CONNECT

Number display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
　　　　　　　　　　　　　1

When ATX1 is set

• When ATX1, AT￥V0 (default) is set

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format : "CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>".

Text display example　　: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
　　　　　　　　　　　　　CONNECT 460800

Number display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
　　　　　　　　　　　　　1 21

• When ATX1, AT￥V1 is set[*1]

The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format.

"CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal - PC> <Communication protocol> <dialup connection (APN)>/<upstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal→radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal←radio base station)>"[*2]

Text display example　　: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
　　　　　　　　　　　　　CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/384/7232
　　　　　　　　　　　　　(Indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp providing a
　　　　　　　　　　　　　maximum upload speed of 384kbps and a maximum download speed of
　　　　　　　　　　　　　7232kbps.)

Number display example : ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
　　　　　　　　　　　　　1 21 5

[*1] When ATX1 and AT￥V1 are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only AT￥V0 be used.

[*2] When AT￥V1 is set, <dialup connection (APN)> and the following are displayed only when packet is used for connection.

44

Kuten Code List

**For entering characters using code, see "Entering characters using code" in the attached manual.
Note that some characters in the code input list may look different from actual ones.**

1st -3rd	4th digit of code									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

The main body of this page is a Kuten code chart consisting of three side-by-side blocks (1st–3rd code groups 010–080, 081–202, and 203–261), each listing the 4th digit of the code (0–9) and the corresponding Japanese characters, symbols, kana, Greek, Cyrillic, and kanji glyphs.

左段 (Left column)

1st-3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
										さ
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270	察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐	鯖
271	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山	惨
272	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕	讃
273	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残				
							し			
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280	次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而	耳
281	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺	軸
282	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉	湿
283	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝	屡
284	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮	社
285	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺	尺
286	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱	惹
287	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種	腫
288	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹	綬
289	需	囚	収	周						
290	宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋	終
291	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴	輯
292	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十	従
293	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔	夙
294	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術	述
295	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循	旬
296	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵	醇
297	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒	署
298	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐	恕
299	鋤	除	傷	償						
300	勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨	妾
301	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠	彰
302	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶	松
303	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦	照
304	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧	紹
305	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔	詳
306	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上	丈
307	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常	情
308	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲	醸
309	錠	嘱	埴	飾						
310	拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食	蝕
311	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審	心
312	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申	疹
313	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診	身
314	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬	尋
315	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		笥	諏
								す		
315			須	酢	図	厨	逗			
316	吹	垂	帥	推	水	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰
317	遂	酔	錐	錘	随	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数
318	枢	趨	雛	据	杉	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾
319	澄	摺	寸							
						せ				
320	世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制	勢	姓	征	性
321	成	政	整	星	晴	棲	栖	正	清	牲
322	生	盛	精	聖	声	製	西	誠	誓	請
323	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税	脆	隻	席	惜
324	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積	籍	績	脊	責
325	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙	接	摂	折	設
326	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌	蝉	仙	先	千
327	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦	扇	撰	栓	栴
328	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎	煽	旋	穿	箭
329	線	繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
330	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
331										

中段 (Middle column)

1st-3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糧					
						そ				
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340	臓	蔵	贈	造		促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
								た		
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350	叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿	棚
351	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦	担
352	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪	綻
353	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断	暖
354	檀	段	男	談						
							ち			
354							値	知	地	弛
355	恥	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳
356	築	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡
357	着	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫
358	衷	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著
359	貯	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵	帖	帳	庁	弔
360	張	彫	徴	懲	挑	暢	朝	潮	牒	町
361	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶	調	諜	超	跳	銚
362	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗	直	朕	沈	珍	賃
363	鎮	陳								
							つ			
363							津	墜	椎	槌
364	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃	漬
365	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷	嬬
366	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴					
							て			
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓	邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥
370	摘	擢	敵	滴	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲
371	徹	撤	轍	迭	鉄	典	填	天	展	店
372	添	纏	甜	貼	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱
373	田	電								
							と			
373							兎	吐	堵	塗
374	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟	賭	途
375	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴	怒	倒
376	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套	宕	嶋
377	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟	盗	淘	湯
378	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等	答	筒	糖
379	統	到	董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃
380	透	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂
381	導	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅
382	峠	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤
383	毒	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶
384	苫	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚
385	遁	頓	呑	曇	鈍					
					な					
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
386	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
387	軟	難	汝							
							に			
388			二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉	虹
388	廿	日	乳	入						
389	如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認			
							ぬ			
390						濡				
							ね			
390						禰				

右段 (Right column)

1st-3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃
392	粘									
					の					
392					乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩
393	濃	納	能	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤		
							は			
393								巴	把	播
394	覇	杷	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬
395	俳	廃	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺
396	輩	配	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買
397	売	賠	陪	這	蠅	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥
398	博	拍	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫
399	曝	漠	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦			
400	函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌	
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
							ひ			
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410	鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱	肘
411	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐	百
412	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表	評
413	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜	蛭
414	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻	敏
415	瓶									
					ふ					
415					不	付	埠	夫	婦	富
416	冨	布	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父
417	符	腐	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附
418	侮	撫	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風
419	葺	蕗	伏	副	復	幅	服	福	腹	複
420	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏	物	鮒	分	吻
421	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮	粉	糞	紛	雰
422	文	聞								
							へ			
422								丙	併	兵
423	塀	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米
424	頁	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏
425	変	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩
426	弁	鞭								
						ほ				
426			保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補
427	輔	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩
428	倣	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩
429	庖	抱	捧	放	方	朋	法	泡	烹	砲
430	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦
431	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨
432	帽	忘	忙	房	暴	望	某	棒	冒	紡
433	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿	鉾	防	吠	頬	北
434	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃
435	没	殆	堀	幌	奔	本	翻	凡	盆	
							ま	摩	磨	魔
436	麻	埋	妹	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜
437	枕	鮪	柾	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	末
438	沫	迄	侭	繭	麿	万	慢	満		
439	漫	蔓								
						み	味	未	魅	巳
440	箕	岬	密	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	民	眠
				妙	粍					
							む			務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
							め			冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
						も	摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶

Left column (447–475)

1st-3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
447	紋	門	乄							
や										
447						也	冶	夜	爺	耶
448	野	弥	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖
449	柳	薮	鑓							
ゆ										
449						愉	愈	油	癒	
450	諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽	
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
よ									予	
452										
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
ら										羅
456										
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
り									利	吏
458										
459	履	李	梨	理	璃	痢	裏	裡	里	離
460	陸	律	率	立	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜
461	琉	留	硫	粒	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅
462	虜	了	亮	僚	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼
463	猟	療	瞭	稜	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵
464	領	力	緑	倫	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨
465	輪	隣	鱗	麟						
る										
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類					
れ						令	伶	例	冷	励
466										
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470	蓮	連	錬							
ろ							呂	魯	櫓	炉
470									賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
わ							倭	和	話	歪
473									賄	脇 惑 枠
474	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾	碗
475	腕									

Middle column (510–587)

1st-3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
510								咒	咤	咾
511	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺					
512	售	咯	唱	啀	啌	啜	啅	啖	啗	
513	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃
514	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	
515	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營
516	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆
517	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚮	嚶		
518	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮
519	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉	圈				
520						國	圍	圓	圦	圷
521	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡	坿
522	垉	垀	坻	垉	垰	埃	埆	埔	埒	埓
523	埖	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲	堡	塢	塋	塰
524	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹	墟	墫	墺	壞
525	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑	壗	壙	壘	壥
526	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹				
527	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬
528	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘
529	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩					
530							妁	妝	佞	侫
531	妣	妲	姆	姨	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟
532	娑	娜	娉	娚	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢
533	婪	媚	媼	媾	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦
534	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪
535	嬶	嬾	孃	孅	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥
536	孩	孰	孳	孵	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦
537	宸	寃	寇	寉	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞
538	寥	寫	寰	寶	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓
539	尠	尢	尨	尸	尹					
540						屁	屆	屎	屓	屐
541	屐	屏	孱	屬	屮	乢	屶	屹	岌	岑
542	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼	岷	峅	岾	峇
543	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌	峪	崋	崕	崗
544	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢	崚	崙	崘	嵌
545	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂	嶢
546	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷	嶼	巉	巍	巓
547	巒	巖	巛	巫	已	巵	帋	帚	帙	帑
548	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃	幀	幎	幗	幔	幟
549	幢	幤	幇	幵	并	幺	麼	广	庠	廁
550		廂	廈	廐	廏	廖	廣	廝	廚	廛
551	廢	廡	廨	廩	廬	廱	廳	廰	廴	廸
552	廾	弃	弉	彝	彜	弋	弑	弖	弩	弭
553	弸	彁	彈	彌	彎	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙
554	彡	彭	彳	彷	徃	徂	彿	徊	很	徑
555	徇	從	徙	徘	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻
556	忤	忸	忱	忝	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐
557	怩	怎	怱	怛	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚
558	恁	恪	恷	恟	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤
559	恂	恬	恫	恙	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚	悄
560		悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸	惠
561	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕	愆
562	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惻	惱	愍
563	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿	愼	愬	愨
564	愴	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慙	慚	慫
565	慴	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖
566	憇	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮	懌	懊
567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦
568	懣	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懵	戀	戈
569	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛					
570						戞	戡	截	戮	戰
571	戲	戳	扁	扎	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼
572	抂	抉	找	抒	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗
573	拑	抻	拏	拿	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊
574	拂	拇	抛	拉	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈
575	拯	拵	捐	挾	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀
576	掫	捶	掣	掏	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾
577	揩	揀	揆	揣	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搗
578	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕	撓	撥
579	撩	撈	撼	據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂
580		擱	擧	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬
581	擶	擴	擲	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攅	攤
582	攣	攫	攴	攵	攷	收	攸	畋	效	敖
583	敕	敍	敘	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變
584	斛	斟	斫	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒
585	旛	旙	无	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳
586	昵	昶	昴	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝
587	晤	晧	晨	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉

Right column (588–665)

1st-3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝
589	曁	暹	曉	暾	暼	曄	暸	曖	曚	曠
590	昿	曦	曩	曰	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦
591	朧	霸	朮	朿	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞
592	杠	杙	杣	杤	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌
593	枋	枦	枡	枅	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩
594	枸	柤	柞	柝	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧
595	檜	栞	框	栩	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫
596	桙	档	桷	桿	梟	梏	梍	桴	梃	栝
597	桛	梏	梟	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹
598	桷	梶	椛	梁	棡	椌	棐	椏	梫	椯
599	棬	椣	椡	棆	楹	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔
600	楾	椹	楴	椽	楙	椿	楨	楞	楝	榁
601	楪	榲	榮	槐	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨
602	槊	槝	榻	槃	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕
603	榴	槞	槨	樂	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧
604	樅	榱	樞	槭	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣
605	樓	橄	樌	橲	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦
606	橈	樸	樢	檐	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣	檗
607	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞	櫑	櫟
608	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒	欏	桜
609	欷	欸	欹	飮	歇	歃	歉	歐	歙	歔
610	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿	殀	殄	殃	殍
611	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫	殯	殲	殱	殳
612	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟	毬	毫	毳	毯
613	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤	氣	汞	汕	汢
614	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛	汾	汨	汳	沒
615	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗	泅	泝	沮	沱
616	沾	沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
617	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤
618	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
619	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
620	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
621	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
622	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
623	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
624	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
625	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
626						漾	漓	滷	澆	潺
627	潸	澁	澀	潯	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘
628	澎	澑	濂	潦	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆
629	澪	濟	濕	濬	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉
630						瀋	濺	瀑	瀁	瀏
631	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾	瀲
632	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳	炮
633	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥	煕
634	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄	熕
635	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎	燠
636	燬	燧	燵	燼	燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨
637	爭	爬	爰	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋
638	牘	牌	牴	牾	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢
639	犧	犹	犲	狃	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠
640	狡	狹	狷	倏	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴
641	猯	猩	猥	猾	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨
642	獰	獣	獵	獻	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀
643	珥	珮	珞	璢	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺
644	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪
645	瑶	瑾	璋	璞	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱	
646						瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮
647	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎
648	甍	甕	甓	甞	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊
649	畉	畛	畆	畚	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸
650		當	疆	疇	畴	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚
651	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼
652	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼
653	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧
654	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆
655	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰
656	癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎	
657	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
658	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
659	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
660	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
661	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
662	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
663	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
664	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
665	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬	磧	磚	磽	磴	礇

3

1st -3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
666	瞖	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碵	磕	磊	磬	碉	碯	磑	磲
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磋	磔	碻	磊	礙	礬
670	礩	碃	磚	磽	磴	礇	礦	礬	礙	礫
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	禔	禪	禔	祿	禄
672	禊	禝	禘	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	穡
675	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕	窘
676	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笑	笊	笙	笞	笠	筴	筬
680	笋	筌	筍	笏	筐	筐	笄	筵	筌	筴
681	覓	笹	筮	筬	筬	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箋	篆	筿	筝	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	箭	篦	篥	籠	簀	簇	簓
684	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪	簟	簷
685	簫	籀	籤	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	絛	綏	絽	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵
693	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緘	緜	縅	縊
695	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻
696	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繞	繚
697	繝	繚	繧	繝	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻
698	纃	緕	繽	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐
699	纓	纔	纖	纛	纜	缸	缺			
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膸	膽	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臈	臚	臟
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀	艘	艙
716	艝	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮	艱	艷
717	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡	苣
718	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹	苞
719	茆	苜	茉	苙	茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀
720		茹	荐	荅	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚
721	莪	莟	莢	莖	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵
722	荳	荵	莠	莉	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽
723	萃	菘	萋	菁	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢
724	萠	莽	萸	蔆	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄
725	葷	葫	蒭	葮	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹
726	萵	蓊	葢	蒹	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚
727	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘
728	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈	
729	蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊	薨
730		蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
731	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
732	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
733	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
734	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
735	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
736	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
737	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
738	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙	蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢
739	螟	螂	螯	蟋	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄
740		螳	蟇	蟆	螻	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍
741	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡
742	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻					

1st -3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
743	衄	衂	衒	衒	衙	衞	衞	衢	衫	袁
744	衾	袞	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮
745	袙	袢	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔
746	裘	裙	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄
747	裝	褞	褠	褪	褌	褝	褧	褧	褓	襃
748	褫	襄	褻	褶	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞	襦
749	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃	覈	覊
750		覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲	覺
751	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸	訃
752	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛	詒
753	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄	誨
754	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂	諚
755	諳	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷	諞	諛	謌
756	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠	謳	鞫	謦
757	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎	證	譖	譛
758	譚	譫	譟	譬	譎	譛	譚	譫	譟	譬
759	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒	讓	讖	讙
760		讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎	豐	豕
761	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊	貍	貎
762	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲	貳	貮
763	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺	賻	贄
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊	蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈
770		蹙	蹤	蹠	踪	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼
771	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙
772	躡	躬	躰	軆	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛
773	軣	軼	軻	軫	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙
774	輓	輜	輟	輛	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅
775	轂	輾	轌	轉	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣
776	轤	辜	辟	辣	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢
777	迪	迯	邇	迴	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡
778	逍	逞	逖	逋	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸	
779	遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遨	遘	遘
780		遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁
781	邀	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤
782	扈	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘
783	酣	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫
784	醯	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐
785	釖	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔
786	鈬	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕
787	鈿	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銖
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	鋺	鉸
789	鋧	鉻	鉾	鉸	鋭					
790		錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
791	錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠	鍼
792	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗	鏨
793	鏥	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔	鐓	鐃
794	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐡	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁	鑒
795	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵	鑷
796	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊	閔
797	閖	閣	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻	閾
798	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖	關	闡
799	闥	闢	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌		
800		陏	陷	陜	陞	陝	陟	陦	陲	陬
801	隍	隘	隕	隗	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴
802	隶	隸	隹	雎	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍
803	雕	雹	霄	霆	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖
804	霙	霤	霪	霰	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈
805	靂	靉	靜	靠	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱
806	靹	鞅	靼	鞁	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜
807	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜
808	韭	齏	韲	竟	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤
809	顏	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頭	頽	顆	顎
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餎	餅	餔	餐	餤
812	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅	饐	饋
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饐	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷	髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟

1st -3rd	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
820		鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯
821	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓
822	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊
823	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡
824	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆
825	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰
826	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧
827	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯
828	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈
829	鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇	鶫
830		鵯	鵺	鶚	鶼	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鷁
831	鶻	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鷓	鷸	鷦
832	鷭	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁
833	麈	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸
834	麪	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點
835	黝	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻
836	黼	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊
837	齒	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪
838	齷	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠	堯	槇	遙	瑤
839	凜	熙								
840										